

ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS FOR  
**RESIDENTIAL AND  
NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS**

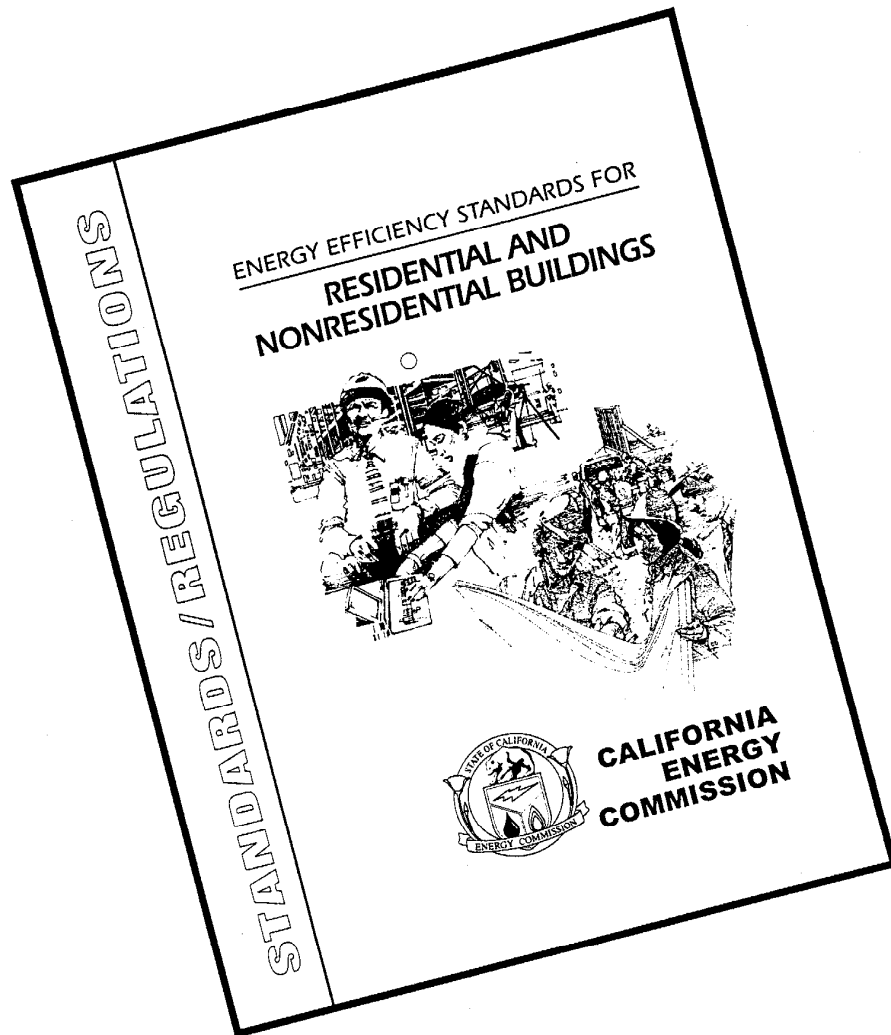


JULY 1999

**CALIFORNIA  
ENERGY  
COMMISSION**

Gray Davis, Governor

P400-98-001



---

**CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION**

---

*Valerie T. Hall, Manager*

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS &  
APPLIANCES**

*Scott W. Matthews, Deputy Director*

**ENERGY EFFICIENCY DIVISION**

*Kent Smith, Acting Executive Director*

**OFFICE OF EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR**

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS ADMINISTRATIVE REGULATIONS

Section 10-101	— Scope .....	Admin-1
Section 10-102	— Definitions .....	Admin-1
Section 10-103	— Permit, Certificate, Informational, and Enforcement Requirements for Designers, Installers, Builders, Manufacturers, and Suppliers.....	Admin-2
Section 10-104	— Exceptional Designs .....	Admin-6
Section 10-105	— Enforcement by the Commission.....	Admin-7
Section 10-106	— Locally Adopted Energy Standards.....	Admin-7
Section 10-107	— Interpretations.....	Admin-8
Section 10-108	— Exemption.....	Admin-8
Section 10-109	— Calculation Methods and Alternative Component Packages.....	Admin-9
Section 10-110	— Procedures for Consideration of Applications under Sections 10-104, 10-106, 10-108, and 10-109.....	Admin-11
Section 10-111	— Certification and Labeling of Fenestration Product U-Values, Solar Heat Gain Coefficient, and Air Leakage.....	Admin-12
Section 10-112	— Criteria for Default Tables.....	Admin-16
<b>SUBCHAPTER 1</b>	<b>All Occupancies—General Provisions .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Section 100	— Scope .....	1
Section 101	— Definitions and Rules of Construction.....	5
Section 102	— Calculation of Source Energy Consumption.....	26
Section 103	— Reserved.....	26
Section 104	— Reserved.....	26
Section 105	— Reserved.....	26
Section 106	— Reserved.....	26
Section 107	— Reserved.....	26
Section 108	— Reserved.....	26
Section 109	— Reserved.....	26
<b>SUBCHAPTER 2</b>	<b>All Occupancies—Mandatory Requirements for the Manufacture, Construction and Installation of Systems, Equipment and Building Components.....</b>	<b>27</b>
Section 111	— Mandatory Requirements for Appliances Regulated by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations .....	27
Section 112	— Mandatory Requirements for Space-Conditioning Equipment .....	28
Section 113	— Mandatory Requirements for Service Water-Heating Systems and Equipment .....	30
Section 114	— Mandatory Requirements for Pool and Spa Heating Systems and Equipment .....	31
Section 115	— Natural Gas Central Furnaces, Cooking Equipment, and Pool and Spa Heaters: Pilot Lights Prohibited .....	33

**TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(CONTINUED)**

[Section 116](#) — Mandatory Requirements for Fenestration Products and Exterior  
Doors..... 33

[Section 117](#) — Mandatory Requirements for Joints and Other Openings..... 36

[Section 118](#) — Mandatory Requirements for Insulation ..... 36

[Section 119](#) — Mandatory Requirements for Lighting Control Devices..... 37

**SUBCHAPTER 3 Nonresidential, High-Rise Residential, and Hotel/Motel**

**Occupancies—Mandatory Requirements for Space-Conditioning and Service Water-Heating Systems and Equipment..... 41**

[Section 120](#) — Space-conditioning and Service Water-heating Systems and Equipment  
— General ..... 41

[Section 121](#) — Requirements for Ventilation ..... 41

[Section 122](#) — Required Controls for Space-conditioning Systems ..... 44

[Section 123](#) — Requirements for Pipe Insulation ..... 47

[Section 124](#) — Requirements for Air Distribution System Ducts and Plenums..... 48

[Section 125](#) — Reserved. .... 50

[Section 126](#) — Reserved. .... 50

[Section 127](#) — Reserved. .... 50

[Section 128](#) — Reserved. .... 50

[Section 129](#) — Reserved. .... 50

**SUBCHAPTER 4 Nonresidential, High-rise Residential, and Hotel/Motel**

**Occupancies—Mandatory Requirements for Lighting Systems and Equipment..... 51**

[Section 130](#) — Lighting Systems and Equipment—General ..... 51

[Section 131](#) — Lighting Controls that Must Be Installed..... 52

[Section 132](#) — Requirements for Lighting Circuiting ..... 55

[Section 133](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 134](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 135](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 136](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 137](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 138](#) — Reserved. .... 56

[Section 139](#) — Reserved. .... 56

**SUBCHAPTER 5 Nonresidential, High-Rise Residential, And Hotel/Motel**

**Occupancies—Performance And Prescriptive Compliance Approaches For**

**Achieving Energy Efficiency..... 57**

[Section 140](#) — Choice of Performance and Prescriptive Approaches..... 57

[Section 141](#) — Performance Approach: Energy Budgets..... 57

[Section 142](#) — Prescriptive Approach ..... 61

[Section 143](#) — Prescriptive Requirements for Building Envelopes ..... 61

**TABLE OF CONTENTS  
(CONTINUED)**

Section 144	— Prescriptive Requirements for Space-conditioning Systems .....	72
Section 145	— Prescriptive Requirements for Service Water-heating Systems .....	77
Section 146	— Prescriptive Requirements for Lighting .....	77
Section 147	— Reserved. ....	86
Section 148	— Reserved. ....	86
<b>SUBCHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Nonresidential, High-rise Residential, and Hotel/Motel</b>	
	<b>Occupancies—Additions, Alterations, and Repairs .....</b>	<b>87</b>
Section 149	— Additions, Alterations, and Repairs to Existing Buildings that Will Be Nonresidential, High-rise Residential, and Hotel/Motel Occupancies .....	87
<b>SUBCHAPTER 7</b>	<b>Low-rise Residential Buildings—Mandatory Features and Devices....</b>	<b>91</b>
Section 150	— Mandatory Features and Devices .....	91
<b>SUBCHAPTER 8</b>	<b>Low-rise Residential Buildings—Performance and Prescriptive</b>	
	<b>Compliance Approaches .....</b>	<b>99</b>
Section 151	— Performance and Prescriptive Compliance Approaches .....	99
<b>SUBCHAPTER 9</b>	<b>Low-rise Residential Buildings—Additions and Alterations in</b>	
	<b>Existing Low-rise Residential Buildings.....</b>	<b>125</b>
Section 152	— Energy Efficiency Standards for Additions and Alterations in Existing Buildings that Will Be Low-rise Residential Occupancies.....	125
<b>APPENDIX 1-A</b>	<b>Standards Referenced in Energy Efficiency Regulations .....</b>	<b>131</b>

# **ADMINISTRATIVE REGULATIONS**

# CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS

## TITLE 24, PART 1

### ARTICLE 1—ENERGY BUILDING REGULATIONS

#### SECTION 10-101 – SCOPE

- (a) This article contains administrative regulations relating to the energy building regulations in [Title 24, Part 6](#). This article applies to all residential and nonresidential buildings.
- (b) Nothing in this article lessens any necessary qualifications or responsibilities of licensed or registered building professionals or other designers or builders, or the duties of enforcement agencies that exist under state or local law.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

#### SECTION 10-102 – DEFINITIONS

In this article the following definitions apply:

**ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHOD APPROVAL MANUAL** or **ACM MANUAL** is the Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual for the 1998 Energy Efficiency Standards for Nonresidential Buildings, 1998, (P400-98-011) for nonresidential buildings, hotels, and multi-family residential buildings with four or more stories and the Alternative Calculation Method (ACM) Approval Manual for the 1998 Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential Buildings, 1998, (P400-98-003) for all single family and low-rise multi-family residential buildings.

**APPLIANCE STANDARDS** are the California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Chapter 2, Subchapter 4, Article 4, Sections 1601 to 1608.

**APPROVED CALCULATION METHOD** is a Public Domain Computer Program approved under [Section 10-109 \(a\)](#), or any Alternative Calculation Method approved under [Section 10-109 \(b\)](#).

**BUILDING PERMIT** is an electrical, plumbing, mechanical, building, or other permit or approval, that is issued by an enforcement agency, and that authorizes any construction that is subject to [Part 6](#).

**COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**COMPLIANCE APPROACH** is any one of the allowable methods by which the design and construction of a building may be demonstrated to be in compliance with [Part 6](#). The compliance approaches are the performance compliance approach and the prescriptive compliance approach. The requirements for each compliance approach are set forth in [Section 100 \(d\) 2](#) of Part 6.

**10-102 –  
10-103**

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA** is the “conditioned floor area” as defined in [Section 101 \(b\)](#) of Part 6.

**ENERGY BUDGET** is the “energy budget” as defined in [Section 101 \(b\)](#) of Part 6.

**ENFORCING AGENCY** is the city, county, or state agency responsible for issuing a building permit.

**EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR** is the executive director of the commission.

**HVAC SYSTEM** is the “HVAC system” as defined in [Section 101 \(b\)](#) of Part 6.

**MANUFACTURED DEVICE** is the “manufactured device” as defined in [Section 101 \(b\)](#) of Part 6.

**PART 6** is the California Code of Regulations, [Title 24, Part 6](#).

**PUBLIC ADVISER** is the Public Adviser of the commission.

**R-VALUE** is the measure of the resistance of a material or building component to the passage of heat in  $[\text{hr.} \times \text{ft.}^2 \times \text{°F}] \div \text{Btu}$ .

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-103 – PERMIT, CERTIFICATE, INFORMATIONAL, AND ENFORCEMENT REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGNERS, INSTALLERS, BUILDERS, MANUFACTURERS, AND SUPPLIERS**

**(a) Documentation.**

1. **Certificate of compliance.** The Certificate(s) of Compliance described in Section 10-103 shall be signed by the person(s) responsible for the building design to certify conformance with Part 6. The signer(s) shall be eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to sign such documents. If more than one person has responsibility for building design, each person may sign the document or documents applicable to that portion of the design for which the person is responsible. Alternatively, the person with chief responsibility for design may prepare and sign the document for the entire design.

Subject to the preceding paragraph, persons who prepare energy compliance documentation shall sign a statement that the documentation is accurate and complete.

2. **Application for a building permit.** Each application for a building permit subject to Part 6, shall contain at least one copy of the documents listed in [Sections 10-103 \(a\) 2 A](#), [10-103 \(a\) 2 B](#), and [10-103 \(a\) 2 C](#).



- A. For all new buildings designated to allow a conditioned use of an occupancy group or type regulated by Part 6, the applicant shall file the appropriate Certificate(s) of Compliance on the plans. The certificate(s) shall indicate the features and performance specifications needed to comply with Part 6, and shall be approved by the local enforcement agency by stamp or authorized signature. The Certificate(s) of Compliance and supporting documentation shall be readily legible and of substantially similar format and informational order and content to the appropriate Certificate(s) of Compliance and supporting documentation in the appropriate Residential or Nonresidential Manual, as defined in Part 6.
- B. Plans and specifications submitted with each application for a building permit shall show the characteristics of each feature, material, component, and manufactured device proposed to be installed in order to have the building meet the requirements of Part 6, and of any other feature, material, component, or manufactured device that Part 6 requires be indicated on the plans and specifications. If any characteristic is materially changed before final construction and installation, such that the building may no longer comply with Part 6, the building must be brought back into compliance, and so indicated on amended plans, specifications, and Certificate(s) of Compliance and shall be submitted to the enforcement agency. Such characteristics shall include the efficiency (or other characteristic regulated by Part 6) of each device.
- C. All documentation necessary to demonstrate compliance for the building, and of the sections of Part 6 with which the building is intended to comply shall be submitted with each application for a building permit. The forms used to demonstrate compliance shall be readily legible and of substantially similar format and informational order and content to the appropriate forms in the Residential or Nonresidential Manual, as defined in Part 6.

3. **Installation certificate.**

- A. The person with overall responsibility for construction or the person or persons responsible for the installation of regulated manufactured devices shall post, or make available with the building permit(s) issued for the building, the Installation Certificate(s) for manufactured devices regulated by the appliance standards or Part 6. Such Installation Certificate(s) shall be made available to the enforcement agency for all appropriate inspections.

These certificates shall:

- i. Identify features required to verify compliance with the appliance standards and Part 6.
- ii. Include a statement indicating that the installed devices conform to the appliance standards and Part 6 and the requirements for such devices given in the plans and specifications approved by the local enforcement agency.

- iii. State the number of the building permit under which the construction or installation was performed.
  - iv. Be signed by the individual eligible under Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code to accept responsibility for construction, or their authorized representative. If more than one person has responsibility for building construction, each person may prepare and sign the part of the document applicable to the portion of construction for which they are responsible; alternatively, the person with chief responsibility for construction may prepare and sign the document for the entire construction.
- B. The enforcement agency may require the person with overall responsibility for the construction to provide any other reasonable information to determine that the building as constructed is consistent with approved plans and specifications and complies with Part 6.
- C. If construction on any portion of the building subject to Part 6 will be impossible to inspect because of subsequent construction, the enforcement agency may require the Installation Certificate(s) to be posted upon completion of that portion.
4. **Insulation certificate.** After installing wall, ceiling, or floor insulation, the installer shall make available to the enforcement agency or post in a conspicuous location in the building a certificate signed by the installer stating that the installation is consistent with the plans and specifications described in [Section 10-103 \(a\) 2 A](#) and for which the building permit was issued and conforms with the requirements of Part 6. The certificate shall also state the manufacturer's name and material identification, the installed R-value, and (in applications of loose fill insulation) the minimum installed weight per square foot consistent with the manufacturer's labeled installed design density for the desired R-value.

**EXCEPTION:** Enforcing agencies may exempt nonresidential buildings that have no more than 1,000 square feet of conditioned floor area in the entire building and an occupant load of 49 persons or less from the documentation requirements of [Section 10-103 \(a\)](#), provided a statement of compliance with Part 6 is submitted and signed by a licensed engineer or the licensed architect with chief responsibility for the design.

(b) **Operating and Maintenance Information to be Provided by Builder.**

1. **Operating information.** The builder shall provide the building owner at occupancy the appropriate Certificate(s) of Compliance and a list of the features, materials, components, and mechanical devices installed in the building and instructions on how to operate them efficiently. The instructions shall be consistent with specifications set forth by the executive director.

For residential buildings, such information shall, at a minimum, include information indicated on forms Certificate of Compliance (CF-1R), Mandatory Measures (MF-1R), Installation Certificate (CF-6R), Insulation Certificate (IC-1), and a manual which

provides all information specified in this [Section 10-103 \(b\)](#). The *Home Energy Manual* (P400-92-031, July 1992) may be used to meet the requirement for providing this manual.

For nonresidential buildings, such information shall, at a minimum, include information required by the Certificates of Compliance, forms ENV-1, MECH-1 and LTG-1, an Installation Certificate and an Insulation Certificate.

For dwelling units, buildings or tenant spaces which are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for operating the feature, material, component, or mechanical device installed in the building.

2. **Maintenance information.** The builder shall provide to the building owner at occupancy maintenance information for all features, materials, components, and manufactured devices that require routine maintenance for efficient operation. Required routine maintenance actions shall be clearly stated and incorporated on a readily accessible label. The label may be limited to identifying, by title and/or publication number, the operation and maintenance manual for that particular model and type of feature, material, component, or manufactured device.

For dwelling units, buildings or tenant spaces which are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for maintaining the feature, material, component, or mechanical device installed in the building.

3. **Ventilation information.** For nonresidential buildings, the builder shall provide the building owner at occupancy a description of the quantities of outdoor and recirculated air that the ventilation systems are designed to provide to each area. For buildings or tenant spaces which are not individually owned and operated, or are centrally operated, such information shall be provided to the person(s) responsible for operating and maintaining the feature, material, component, or mechanical device installed in the building.

- (c) **Equipment Information to be Provided by Manufacturer or Supplier.** The manufacturer or supplier of any manufactured device shall, upon request, provide to building designers and installers information about the device. The information shall include the efficiency (and other characteristics regulated by Part 6).

- (d) **Enforcement Agency Requirements.**

1. **Permits.** An enforcement agency shall not issue a building permit for any construction unless the enforcement agency determines in writing that the construction is designed to comply with the requirements of Part 6 that are in effect on the date the building permit was applied for.

**10-103 –  
10-104**

If a building permit has been previously issued, there has been no construction under the permit, and the permit has expired, the enforcement agency shall not issue a new permit unless the enforcement agency determines in writing that the construction is designed to comply with the requirements of Part 6 in effect on the date the new permit is applied for.

“Determines in writing” includes, but is not limited to, approval of a building permit with a stamp normally used by the enforcement agency.

2. **Inspection.** The enforcement agency shall inspect new construction to determine whether it is consistent with the agency's approved plans and specifications, and complies with Part 6. Final occupancy permits shall not be issued until such consistency is verified. For Occupancy Group R-3, final inspection shall not be complete until such consistency is verified.

Such verification shall include determining that all installed manufactured devices, regulated by the appliance standards or Part 6, are indicated on the Installation Certificate and are consistent with approved plans. This certificate shall include information specified in [Section 10-103 \(a\) \(3\) \(A\)](#).

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-104 – EXCEPTIONAL DESIGNS**

**NOTE:** See [Section 10-109](#) for approval of calculation methods and Alternative Component Packages.

- (a) **Requirements.** If a building permit applicant proposes to use a performance compliance approach, and the building designs cannot be adequately modeled by an approved calculation method, an applicant shall be granted a building permit if the commission finds:
  1. That the design cannot be adequately modeled with an approved calculation method;
  2. Using an alternative evaluation technique, that the design complies with Part 6; and
  3. That the enforcement agency has determined that the design complies with all other legal requirements.
- (b) **Applications.** The applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application with the following materials to the executive director:
  1. A copy of the plans and specifications required by [Section 10-103 \(a\) 2 A](#);
  2. A statement explaining why meeting the energy budget cannot be demonstrated using an approved calculation method;

3. Documentation from the enforcement agency stating that:
  - A. Meeting the energy budget requirements cannot be demonstrated using an approved calculation method, and
  - B. The design complies with all other legal requirements; and
4. A detailed evaluation of the energy consumption of the proposed building and the building's materials, components, and manufactured devices proposed to be installed to meet the requirements of Part 6, using an alternative evaluation technique. The evaluation shall include a copy of the technique, instructions for its use, a list of all input data, and all other information required to replicate the results.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Sections 25402 and 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

### **SECTION 10-105 – ENFORCEMENT BY THE COMMISSION**

- (a) **Where there is No Local Enforcement Agency.** Before new construction may begin in an area where there is no local enforcement agency, and on any proposed governmental agency building for which there is no enforcement agency, the executive director must determine in writing that the building design conforms to the requirements of Part 6. The person proposing to construct the building shall submit the information described in [Section 10-103 \(a\) 2](#) and [10-103 \(a\) 3](#) to the executive director when such a determination is sought.
- (b) **Where the Local Enforcement Agency Fails to Enforce.** If a local enforcement agency fails to enforce the requirements of this article or of Part 6, the commission, after furnishing 10 days written notice, may condition building permit issuance on submission of the information described in [Sections 10-103 \(a\) 2](#) and [10-103 \(a\) 3](#) to the executive director and on his or her written determination that proposed construction conforms to the requirements of Part 6.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

### **SECTION 10-106 – LOCALLY ADOPTED ENERGY STANDARDS**

- (a) **Requirements.** Local governmental agencies may adopt and enforce energy standards for new buildings, provided the commission finds that the standards will require buildings to be designed to consume no more energy than permitted by Part 6. Such local standards include, but are not limited to, adopting the requirements of Part 6 before their effective date, requiring additional energy conservation measures, or setting more stringent energy budgets. Local adoption of the requirements of Part 6 before their effective date is a sufficient showing that the local standards meet the requirements of this section and Section 25402.1 (f) (2) of the Public Resources Code; in such a case only the documentation listed in [Section 10-106 \(b\)](#), and a statement that the standards are those in Part 6, need be submitted.

**10-106 –  
10-108**

(b) **Documentation Application.** Local governmental agencies wishing to enforce locally adopted energy conservation standards shall submit four copies of an application with the following materials to the executive director:

1. The proposed local energy standards.
2. A study with supporting analysis showing how the local agency determined energy savings.
3. A statement that the local standards will require buildings to be designed to consume no more energy than permitted by Part 6.
4. The basis of the agency's determination that the standards are cost effective.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-107 – INTERPRETATIONS**

(a) The commission may make a written determination as to the applicability or interpretation of any provision of this article or of Part 6, upon written application, if a dispute concerning a provision arises between an applicant for a building permit and the enforcement agency, and the dispute has been heard by the local board of permit appeals or other highest local review body. Notice of any such appeal, including a summary of the dispute and the section of the regulations involved, shall if possible be sent to the commission by the enforcing agency 15 days before the appeal is heard, and the result of the appeal shall be sent to the commission within 15 days after the decision is made. Either party to the dispute may apply for a determination but shall concurrently deliver a copy of the application to the other party. The determinations are binding on the parties.

(b) The executive director may, upon request, give written advice concerning the meaning of any provision of this article or of Part 6. Such advice is not binding on any person.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-108 – EXEMPTION**

(a) **Requirements.** The commission may exempt any building from any provision of Part 6 if it finds that:

1. Substantial funds had been expended in good faith on planning, designing, architecture, or engineering of the building before the adoption date of the provision.

2. Compliance with the requirements of the provision would be impossible without both substantial delays and substantial increases in costs of construction above the reasonable costs of the measures required to comply with the provision.

(b) **Application.** The applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application with the following materials to the executive director:

1. A summary of the claimant's contracts for the project;
2. A summary of internal financial reports on the project;
3. Dated schedules of design activities; and
4. A progress report on project completion.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

## **SECTION 10-109 – CALCULATION METHODS AND ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES**

**NOTE:** See [Section 10-104](#) for approval of exceptional designs.

(a) **Public Domain Computer Programs.** In addition to the present approved public domain computer programs, the commission may, upon written application or its own motion, approve additional public domain computer programs that may be used to demonstrate that proposed building designs meet energy budgets.

1. The commission shall ensure that users' manuals or guides for each approved program are available.
2. The commission shall approve a program only if, when it models building designs or features, it predicts energy consumption substantially equivalent to that predicted by the computer program used by the commission to set energy budgets.

(b) **Alternative Calculation Methods (All Occupancies).** In addition to public domain computer programs, the commission may approve alternative calculation methods (ACMs) that applicants for building permits may then use to demonstrate compliance with the performance standards (energy budgets) in Part 6.

1. **General requirements.** To obtain approval for an ACM, the proponent shall submit an application that demonstrates that the ACM:
  - A. Makes no changes in any input parameter values specified by the commission in Item 2 below;

- B. Provides input and output documentation that facilitates the enforcement agency's review and meets the formatting and content criteria found in the appropriate ACM Manual;
  - C. Is supported by clear and concise instructions for using the method to demonstrate that the energy budget requirements of Part 6 are met;
  - D. Is reliable and accurate relative to the appropriate public domain computer program; and
  - E. Establishes factors that, when applied to the method's outputs, result in energy budgets for that alternative calculation method that are equivalent to those in Part 6, when the buildings used to develop the energy budgets in Part 6 are modeled.
2. **Procedural requirements for alternative calculation methods.** In order to obtain approval of an ACM, the applicant must comply with the requirements, specifications, and criteria set forth in the appropriate ACM Manual. The ACM Manual specifies application requirements, minimum modeling capabilities, required output forms and instructions, input assumptions, testing requirements, test approval criteria, vendor requirements, and other related requirements. The requirements, specifications, and criteria in the ACM Manuals for the *1998 Energy Efficiency Standards for Residential and Nonresidential Buildings* are hereby incorporated by reference.

**NOTE:** Interested persons may obtain copies of the ACM Manuals from the Energy Commission's Publications Unit.

3. **Application.** The applicant shall submit four copies of a signed application form specified by the executive director. The application shall include the following materials:
- A. The method's analytical capabilities and limitations with respect to the occupancies, designs, materials, and devices covered by Part 6; and
  - B. A demonstration that the criteria in [Section 10-109 \(b\)](#) are met.
  - C. Each of the items on the "Application Checklist" in the appropriate ACM Manual.
  - D. An initial fee of one thousand dollars (\$1000). The total fee shall cover the commission's cost of reviewing and analyzing the proposed method. After the commission determines the total costs, if the costs exceed the initial fee, the commission shall assess additional fees to cover those costs; if the costs are less than the initial fee, the commission shall refund the difference to the applicant.
4. **Exceptional methods.** If the alternative calculation method analyzes designs, materials, or devices that cannot be adequately modeled using the public domain computer programs, the method may be approved as an exceptional method.



Applications for approval of exceptional methods shall include theoretical and empirical information that verify the method's accuracy, and shall also include the other documentation and fees required by [Subsection 10-109 \(b\)](#).

5. **Approval.** The commission may approve a method unconditionally, may restrict approval to specified occupancies, designs, materials, or devices, or may reject the application.
  6. **Resubmittal.** An applicant may resubmit a rejected method or may request modification of a restricted approval. Such application shall include the information specified in [Section 10-109 \(b\)](#) and shall indicate how the method has been changed to enhance its accuracy or capabilities.
  7. **Modification.** Whenever an approved calculation method is changed in any way, the method shall be resubmitted under this section for reapproval. The executive director may waive any of the requirements of this paragraph for nonsubstantive changes.
- (c) The commission may modify or withdraw certification of a program or method under [Section 10-109 \(a\)](#) or [10-109 \(b\)](#) based on approval of other programs or methods that are more suitable.
- (d) **Alternative Component Packages.** The commission may approve any alternative component package, in addition to the packages in [Sections 143 \(a\)](#) and [151 \(f\)](#) of Part 6, which it determines will meet the energy budgets and is likely to apply to a significant percentage of new buildings or to a significant segment of the building construction and design community. Applications for approval of packages shall use application forms specified by the executive director and shall be subject to the same fee requirements set forth in [Subsection \(b\)](#).
- (e) **Publication of Commission Determinations.** The executive director shall annually publish a manual, newsletter, or other administrative guide containing determinations made by the commission pursuant to this section on or before December 31 of the calendar year.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

## **SECTION 10-110 – PROCEDURES FOR CONSIDERATION OF APPLICATIONS UNDER SECTIONS 10-104, 10-106, 10-108, AND 10-109**

- (a) If the application is complete, the executive director shall make a copy or copies of the application available to interested parties. Comments from interested parties must be submitted within 60 days after acceptance of the application.
- (b) Within 75 days of receipt of an application, the executive director may request any additional information needed to evaluate the application. If the additional information is incomplete,

**10-110 –  
10-111**

consideration of the application will be delayed until the applicant submits complete information.

- (c) Within 75 days of receipt of the application, the executive director may convene a workshop to gather additional information from the applicant and other interested parties. Interested parties will have 15 days after the workshop to submit additional information regarding the application.
- (d) Within 90 days after the executive director receives the application, or within 30 days after receipt of complete additional information requested under [Section 10-110 \(b\)](#), or within 30 days after the receipt of additional information submitted by interested parties under [Section 10-110 \(c\)](#), whichever is later, the executive director shall submit to the commission a written recommendation on the application.
- (e) The application and the executive director's recommendation shall be placed on the consent calendar and considered at the next business meeting after submission of the recommendation. The matter may be removed from the consent calendar at the request of any person.
- (f) The executive director may charge a fee to recover the costs of processing and reviewing applications.
- (g) All applicants have the burden of proof to establish that their applications should be granted.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-111 – CERTIFICATION AND LABELING OF FENESTRATION PRODUCT U-VALUES, SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT, AND AIR LEAKAGE**

This section establishes rules for implementing labeling and certification requirements relating to U-values (also known as U-factors), solar heat gain coefficients, and air leakage for fenestration products under [Section 116 \(a\)](#) of Title 24, California Code of Regulations, Part 6. This section also provides for designation of the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC) as the supervisory entity responsible for administering the state's certification program for fenestration products, provided NFRC meets specified criteria.

(a) **Labeling Requirements.**

- 1. **Temporary labels.** Every fenestration product installed in construction subject to the Title 24, Part 6 shall have attached to it a clearly visible temporary label that lists the U-value, the solar heat gain coefficient (“SHGC”) of that product and the method used to derive those values, and certifies compliance with air infiltration requirements of [Section 116 \(a\) 1](#).
  - A. If the product U-value rating is taken from the commission's default table, then placing the words “CEC Default U-value,” followed by the appropriate default

U-value from [Section 116, Table 1-D](#), on the temporary label meets the U-value labeling requirement of paragraph 1. If the product SHGC rating is taken from the commission's default table from [Section 116, Table 1-E](#), then placing the words “CEC Default SHGC,” followed by the appropriate default SHGC value meets the SHGC labeling requirement of paragraph 1.

- B. If the product U-value rating is derived from the NFRC Rating Procedure, then placing the words “Manufacturer stipulates that this rating was determined in accordance with applicable NFRC procedures” followed by the rating procedure number and certified U-value on the temporary label meets the requirement of paragraph 1.

The “NFRC Rating Procedure” as used in this subparagraph B means the National Fenestration Rating Council's NFRC 100-91: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Thermal Properties (currently limited to U-values) (1991), or NFRC 100: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors (1997) also known as “NFRC 100”, incorporated herein by reference.

- C. If the product SHGC rating is derived from the NFRC Rating Procedure, placing the words “Manufacturer stipulates that this rating was determined in accordance with applicable NFRC procedures” followed by the rating procedure number and certified SHGC on the temporary label meets the requirement of paragraph 1.

The “NFRC Rating Procedure” as used in this subparagraph C means the National Fenestration Rating Council's NFRC 200: Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients at Normal Incidence (1995), also known as “NFRC 200”, incorporated herein by reference.

- D. The temporary label shall also certify that the product complies with the air infiltration requirements of [Section 116 \(a\) 1](#) of the standards.

2. **Permanent labels.** If a product is rated using the NFRC Rating Procedure, it shall be permanently labeled with either a single label or series of marks on the frame, glass, and/or spacer which can be used to trace the product to certification information on file with the certifying organization or to a directory of certified products, published by the supervisory entity, containing the name of the manufacturer, the product type and description of relevant features, the U-value rating, solar heat gain coefficient, and the year of certification.

**EXCEPTION to Section 10-111 (a):** Glazed wall systems and overhead glazing in buildings covered by the nonresidential standards.

(b) **Certification Requirements.**

1. **Certification to default ratings.** If a product's U-value and SHGC are taken from the commission's default tables (Section 116, [Tables 1-D](#) and [1-E](#)), the U-value and SHGC

shall be certified by either the manufacturer or an independent certifying organization approved by the commission.

- A. A temporary label, affixed to the product, that contains the terms “CEC Default U-value” and “CEC Default SHGC,” followed by the appropriate values from the commission's default tables meets this requirement.
  - B. If the product claims the default U-value for a thermal-break product, the manufacturer shall also certify on the label that the product meets the thermal-break product criteria, specified on the default table, on which the default value is based. Placing the terms “Meets Thermal-Break Default Criteria” on the temporary label meets this requirement.
2. **Certification to NFRC rating procedure.** If a product's U-value or SHGC is based on the NFRC Rating Procedure, the U-value or SHGC shall be certified only by an independent certifying organization approved by the commission.
- A. A temporary label, affixed to the product, meeting the requirements of [Section 10-111 \(a\) \(1\) \(B\)](#) or [10-111 \(a\) \(1\) \(C\)](#) certified by the independent certifying organization complies with this requirement.
  - B. An “independent certifying organization approved by the commission” means any organization authorized by the supervisory entity to certify U-value ratings and solar heat gain coefficient ratings in accordance with the NFRC Rating Procedure. If the commission designates the NFRC as the supervisory entity, any independent certification and inspection agency (IA) licensed by NFRC, or during a start-up period, NFRC itself, shall be deemed to be an “independent certifying organization approved by the commission.”
  - C. The “supervisory entity” means the National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC), except as provided in paragraph (c) 1.

**EXCEPTION to Section 10-111 (b):** Temporary and permanent labels are not required for glazed wall systems and overhead glazing in buildings covered by the nonresidential standards.

- (c) **Designation of Supervisory Entity.** The National Fenestration Rating Council shall be the supervisory entity to administer the certification program relating to U-values and solar heat gain coefficient ratings for fenestration products, provided the commission determines that the NFRC meets the criteria in paragraph (d).
- 1. The commission may consider designating a supervisory entity other than NFRC only if the commission determines that the NFRC cannot meet the criteria in paragraph (d). Such other supervisory entity shall meet the criteria in paragraph (d) prior to being designated.
  - 2. The commission shall periodically review, at least annually, the structure and operations of the supervisory entity to ensure continuing compliance with the criteria in paragraph (d).

(d) **Criteria for Supervisory Entity.**

1. Membership in the entity shall be open on a nondiscriminatory basis to any person or organization that has an interest in uniform thermal performance ratings for fenestration products, including, but not limited to, members of the fenestration industry, glazing infill industry, building industry, design professionals, specifiers, utilities, government agencies, and public interest organizations. The membership shall be composed of a broad cross section of those interested in uniform thermal performance ratings for fenestration products.
2. The governing body of the entity shall reflect a reasonable cross-section of the interests represented by the membership.
3. The entity shall maintain a program of oversight of product manufacturers, laboratories, and independent certifying organizations that ensures uniform application of the NFRC Rating Procedures, labeling and certification, and such other rating procedures for other factors affecting energy performance as the NFRC and the commission may adopt.
4. The entity shall require manufacturers and independent certifying organizations within its program to use only laboratories accredited by the supervisory entity to perform simulations and tests under the NFRC Rating Procedure.
5. The entity shall maintain appropriate guidelines for testing and simulation laboratories, manufacturers, and certifying agencies, including requirements for adequate:

Possession and calibration of equipment;

Education, competence, and training of personnel;

Quality control;

Record keeping and reporting;

Periodic review (including, but not limited to, blind testing by laboratories; inspections of products; and inspections of laboratories, manufacturing facilities, and certifying agencies);

Challenges to certified ratings; and

Guidelines to maintain the integrity of the program, including, but not limited to, provisions to avoid conflicts of interest within the rating and certification process.

6. The entity shall be a nonprofit organization and shall maintain reasonable, nondiscriminatory fee schedules for the services it provides and shall make its fee schedules, the financial information on which fees are based, and financial statements available to its members for inspection.

**10-111 –  
10-112**

7. The entity shall provide hearing processes that give laboratories, manufacturers, and certifying agencies a fair review of decisions that adversely affect them.
  8. The entity shall maintain a certification policy committee whose procedures are designed to avoid conflicts of interest in deciding appeals, resolving disputes, and setting policy for the certifying organizations in its program.
  9. The entity shall publish at least annually a directory of products certified and decertified within its program.
  10. The entity itself shall be free from conflict-of-interest ties or to undue influence from any particular fenestration manufacturing interest(s), testing or simulation lab(s), or independent certifying organization(s).
  11. The entity shall provide or authorize the use of labels that can be used to meet the requirements of [Section 116 \(a\) 2](#), paragraphs B and C, and this section.
  12. The entity's certification program shall allow for multiple participants in each aspect of the program to provide for competition between manufacturers, between testing labs, between simulation labs, and between independent certifying organizations.
- (e) **Certification for Other Factors.** Nothing in this section shall preclude any entity, whether associated with a U-value and SHGC certification program or not, from providing certification services relating to factors other than U-values and SHGC for fenestration products.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

**SECTION 10-112 – CRITERIA FOR DEFAULT TABLES**

- (a) The commission shall maintain tables of default U-values and SHGCs for use as an alternative to U-values and SHGCs derived using the NFRC rating procedure. The default values shall meet the following criteria:
1. The values shall be derived from simulations of products using the same computer simulation program(s) used in the NFRC Rating Procedure.
  2. The default values shall be set so that they do not provide to any significant number of products a lower U-value or SHGC than those products would obtain if they were rated using the full NFRC Rating Procedure, including testing and simulation.
- (b) The commission shall periodically review and revise the default tables as necessary to ensure that the criteria are met.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code. Reference: Section 25402.1, Public Resources Code.

# **EFFICIENCY STANDARDS**

**CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS  
TITLE 24, PART 6**

**SUBCHAPTER 1  
ALL OCCUPANCIES—GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**SECTION 100 – SCOPE**

- (a) **Buildings Covered.** The provisions of Title 24, Part 6, apply to all buildings:
1. That are of Occupancy Group A, B, E, F, H, M, R, or S; and
  2. For which an application for a building permit or renewal of an existing permit is filed (or is required by law to be filed) on or after the effective date of the provisions, or which are constructed by a governmental agency; and
  3. That are:
    - A. Directly or indirectly conditioned by mechanical heating or mechanical cooling; or
    - B. Low-rise residential buildings that are heated with a wood heater or another nonmechanical heating system; or
    - C. Semiconditioned nonresidential occupancies.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 100 (a):** Qualified historic buildings, as defined in the State Historic Building Code (Title 24, Part 8).

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 100 (a):** Building departments, at their discretion, may exempt temporary buildings or structures erected in response to a natural disaster. Temporary buildings or structures shall be completely removed upon the expiration of the time limit stated in the permit.

- (b) **Parts of Buildings Regulated.** The provisions of Title 24, Part 6, apply to the building envelope, space-conditioning systems, water-heating systems, and lighting systems of buildings covered by [Section 100 \(a\)](#) as set forth in [Table 1-A](#).
- (c) **Floors and Habitable Stories.**
1. Only habitable floors that have at least 50 percent of their volume above grade as defined in the UBC shall be counted in determining how many habitable stories a building has.
  2. All conditioned space in a floor shall comply with Title 24, Part 6, whether or not the floor is above grade and whether or not it is habitable.



TABLE 1-A—APPLICATION OF STANDARDS

BUILDING TYPE	MANDATORY	PERFORMANCE	PRESCRIPTIVE	ADDITIONS/ ALTERATIONS
All Occupancies	100 through 109 and 118	—	—	—
Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotels/motels				
All	102, 110 through 139	141	142 through 146	149
Envelope	—	141	143	149
Mechanical	120 through 129	141	144 and 145	149
Lighting	130 through 139	141	146	149
Semiconditioned nonresidential buildings of an occupancy group listed in Section 100	119, 130 through 139	—	146	149 (b) 3
Low-rise residential	102, 110 through 118 and 150	151 (a) through (e)	151 (a), (f)	152

(d) **Sections Applicable to Particular Buildings.** Table 1-A and this subsection list the provisions of Title 24, Part 6, that are applicable to different types of buildings covered by [Section 100 \(a\)](#).

1. **All buildings.** [Sections 100 through 109](#) and [118](#) apply to all buildings.
2. **New buildings.**
  - A. **All new buildings.** [Sections 110 through 119](#) apply to all new buildings within the scope of [Section 100 \(a\)](#). In addition, new buildings shall meet the requirements of B or C, as applicable.
  - B. **Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled.**
    - i. **Sections applicable.** [Sections 120 through 146](#) apply to new nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels/motels that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled.
    - ii. **Compliance approaches.** In order to comply with Title 24, Part 6, new nonresidential buildings, high-rise residential buildings, and hotels/motels that are mechanically heated or mechanically cooled must meet the requirements of:

- a. Mandatory measures: The applicable provisions of [Sections 120 through 139](#); and
  - b. Either:
    - Performance approach: [Section 141](#); or
    - Prescriptive approach: [Sections 142 through 146](#).
- C. **Semiconditioned nonresidential buildings.** [Sections 119, 130 through 132, and 146](#) apply to all new unconditioned buildings within the scope of [Section 100 \(a\)](#).
- D. **Low-rise residential buildings that are heated or mechanically cooled.**
- i. **Sections applicable.** [Sections 150 through 151](#) apply to new low-rise residential buildings that are heated or mechanically cooled.
  - ii. **Compliance approaches.** To comply with Title 24, Part 6, new low-rise residential buildings that are heated or mechanically cooled must meet the requirements of:
    - a. Mandatory measures: The applicable provisions of [Sections 110 through 119, and 150](#); and
    - b. Either:
      - Performance approach: [Section 151 \(a\) through \(e\)](#);
      - or
      - Prescriptive approach: [Sections 151 \(a\) and \(f\)](#).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 100 (d) 2 D (ii) (II):** Seasonally occupied agricultural housing limited by state or federal agency contract to occupancy not more than 180 days in any calendar year.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 100 (d) 2 D (ii) (II):** Low-rise residential buildings that are heated with a wood heater or another nonmechanical heating system and that use no energy obtained from depletable sources for lighting or water heating.

3. **New construction in existing buildings.**
- A. **Nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings.** [Section 149](#) applies to new construction in existing buildings that will be nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel occupancies.

**100 (d) 3 – 100 (g)**

- B. **Semiconditioned nonresidential buildings.** Section 149 (b) 3 applies to new construction in an existing semiconditioned building. If new construction results in newly conditioned space, Section 149 (a) shall apply.
  - C. **Low-rise residential buildings.** Section 152 applies to new construction in existing buildings that will be low-rise residential occupancies.
4. **Installation of insulation in existing buildings.** Section 118 applies to buildings in which insulation is being installed in existing attics, or on existing water heaters, or existing space conditioning ducts.
- (e) **Mixed Occupancy.** When a building is designed and constructed for more than one type of occupancy, the space for each occupancy shall meet the provisions of Title 24, Part 6, applicable to that occupancy.
- EXCEPTION to Section 100 (e):** If one occupancy constitutes at least 90 percent of the conditioned floor area of the building, the entire building may comply with the provisions of Title 24, Part 6 applicable to that occupancy, provided that the applicable mandatory measures in Sections 110 through 139, and 150, are met for each occupancy.
- (f) **Administrative Requirements.** Administrative requirements relating to permit requirements, enforcement by the commission, locally adopted energy standards, interpretations, claims of exemption, approved calculation methods, and rights of appeal are specified in California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 1, Sections 10-101 to 10-112.
- (g) **Certification Requirements for Manufactured Devices.** Title 24, Part 6, limits the installation of the following manufactured devices to those that have been certified by their manufacturer to meet or exceed minimum specifications or efficiencies adopted by the commission.
- 1. Central air-conditioning heat pumps and other central air conditioners (Sections 111 and 112).
  - 2. Combination equipment: space heating and cooling, or space heating and water heating [Section 112 (a) 3].
  - 3. Fenestration products (Section 116).
  - 4. Fluorescent lamp ballasts (Section 111).
  - 5. Gas space heaters (Sections 111 and 112).
  - 6. Insulating materials (Section 118).
  - 7. Lighting control devices (Section 119).
  - 8. Oil-fired storage water heaters (Section 113).
  - 9. Other heating and cooling equipment (Sections 111 and 112).
  - 10. Plumbing fittings (Section 111).
  - 11. Pool heaters (Section 114).
  - 12. Refrigerators, refrigerator-freezers, and freezers (Section 111).
  - 13. Room air conditioners (Section 111).
  - 14. Slab floor perimeter insulation [Section 150 (l)].
  - 15. Water heaters (Section 113).

The certification status of any such manufactured device may be confirmed only by reference to:

1. A directory published or approved by the commission; or
2. A copy of the application for certification from the manufacturer and the letter of acceptance from the commission staff; or
3. Written confirmation from the publisher of a commission-approved directory that a device has been certified; or
4. A commission-approved label on the device.

**NOTE to Section 100 (g):** Title 24, Part 6, does not require a builder, designer, owner, operator, or enforcing agency to test any certified device to determine its compliance with minimum specifications or efficiencies adopted by the commission.

## SECTION 101 – DEFINITIONS AND RULES OF CONSTRUCTION

### (a) **Rules of Construction.**

1. Where the context requires, the singular includes the plural and the plural includes the singular.
2. The use of "and" in a conjunctive provision means that all elements in the provision must be complied with, or must exist to make the provision applicable. Where compliance with one or more elements suffices, or where existence of one or more elements makes the provision applicable, "or" (rather than "and/or") is used.
3. "Shall" is mandatory and "may" is permissive.

(b) **Definitions.** Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives in Title 24, Part 6, shall be defined as specified in Section 101. Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives not found in Section 101 shall be defined as specified in Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 2 of the California Code of Regulations. Terms, phrases, words and their derivatives not found in either Title 24, Part 6, or Chapter 2 shall be defined as specified in Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 2 of the *Uniform Building Code*. Where terms, phrases, words and their derivatives are not defined in any of the references above, they shall be defined as specified in *Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged* (1987 edition), unless the context requires otherwise.

**ACCA** is the Air-conditioning Contractors of America.

**ACCESSIBLE** is having access thereto, but which first may require removal or opening of access panels, doors, or similar obstructions.

**ADDITION** is any change to a building that increases conditioned floor area and conditioned volume. See also, "newly conditioned space."

## **101 (b)**

**AIR-TO-AIR HEAT EXCHANGER** is a device which will reduce the heat losses or gains which occur when a building is mechanically ventilated, by transferring heat between the conditioned air being exhausted and the unconditioned air being supplied.

**ALTERATION** is any change to a building's water-heating system, space-conditioning system, lighting system, or envelope that is not an addition.

**ALTERNATIVE CALCULATION METHODS (ACMs)** are the commission's Public Domain Computer Programs, one of the commission's Simplified Calculation Methods, or any other calculation method approved by the commission.

**ANNUAL FUEL UTILIZATION EFFICIENCY (AFUE)** is a measure of the percentage of heat from the combustion of gas or oil which is transferred to the space being heated during a year, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or [Section 112](#).

**ANNUNCIATED** is a visual signaling device that indicates the on, off, or other status of a load.

**ANSI** is the American National Standards Institute.

**APPLIANCE EFFICIENCY REGULATIONS** are the regulations in Title 20, Section 1601 et seq. of the California Code of Regulations.

**APPROVED BY THE COMMISSION** means approval under Section 25402.1 of the Public Resources Code.

**APPROVED CALCULATION METHOD** (See “alternative calculation methods.”)

**ARI** is the Air-conditioning and Refrigeration Institute.

**ASHRAE** is the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-conditioning Engineers.

**ASME** is the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

**ASTM** is the American Society for Testing and Materials.

**ATRIUM** is an opening through two or more floor levels other than enclosed stairways, elevators, hoistways, escalators, plumbing, electrical, air-conditioning or other equipment, which is enclosed space and not defined as a mall.

**AUTOMATIC** is capable of operating without human intervention.

**AUTOMATIC TIME SWITCH CONTROL DEVICES** are devices capable of automatically turning loads off and on based on time schedules.

**BELOW-GRADE WALL** is the portion of a wall, enclosing conditioned space, that is below the grade line.

**BUILDING** is any structure or space for which a permit is sought.

**BUILDING ENVELOPE** is the ensemble of exterior and demising partitions of a building that enclose conditioned space.

**CAPTIVE-KEY OVERRIDE** is a type of lighting control in which the key that activates the override cannot be released when the lights are in the on position.

**CERTIFYING ORGANIZATION** is an independent organization recognized by the commission to certify manufactured devices for performance values in accordance with procedures adopted by the commission.

**CHANDELIERS** (see “ornamental chandeliers.”)

**CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM** (See “space-conditioning system.”)

**CLIMATE ZONES** are the 16 geographic areas of California for which the commission has established typical weather data, prescriptive packages and energy budgets. Climate zone boundary descriptions are in the document "California Climate Zone Descriptions" (July 1995), incorporated herein by reference. Figure 1-A is an approximate map of the 16 climate zones.

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP), COOLING**, is the ratio of the rate of net heat removal to the rate of total energy input, calculated under designated operating conditions and expressed in consistent units, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or [Section 112](#).

**COEFFICIENT OF PERFORMANCE (COP), HEATING**, is the ratio of the rate of net heat output to the rate of total energy input, calculated under designated operating conditions and expressed in consistent units, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or [Section 112](#).

**COMMISSION** is the California State Energy Resources Conservation and Development Commission.

**COMPLETE BUILDING** is an entire building with one occupancy making up 90 percent of the conditioned floor area (see also “entire building”).

**CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA (CFA)** is the floor area (in square feet) of enclosed conditioned space on all floors of a building, as measured at the floor level of the exterior surfaces of exterior walls enclosing the conditioned space.

**CONDITIONED SPACE** is space in a building that is either directly conditioned, indirectly conditioned or semiconditioned.

**CONDITIONED VOLUME** is the total volume (in cubic feet) of the conditioned space within a building.

## 101 (b)

**COOLING EQUIPMENT** is equipment used to provide mechanical cooling for a room or rooms in a building.

**COVERED PRODUCT** is an appliance regulated by the efficiency standards established under the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act, 42 U.S.C., Section 6291 et seq.

**CRAWL SPACE** is a space immediately under the first floor of a building adjacent to grade.

**CTI** is the Cooling Tower Institute.

**C-VALUE** (also known as C-factor) is the time rate of heat flow through unit area of a body induced by a unit temperature difference between the body surfaces, in Btu (hr. x ft.<sup>2</sup> x °F). It is not the same as K-value or K-factor.

**DAYLIT AREA** is the space on the floor that is the larger of 1 plus 2, or 3;

1. For areas daylit by vertical glazing, the daylit area has a length of 15 feet, or the distance on the floor, perpendicular to the glazing, to the nearest 60-inch or higher opaque partition, whichever is less; and a width of the window plus either 2 feet on each side, the distance to an opaque partition, or one half the distance to the closest skylight or vertical glazing, whichever is least.
2. For areas daylit by horizontal glazing, the daylit area is the footprint of the skylight plus, in each of the lateral and longitudinal dimensions of the skylight, the lesser of the floor-to-ceiling height, the distance to the nearest 60-inch or higher opaque partition, or one half the horizontal distance to the edge of the closest skylight or vertical glazing.
3. The daylit area calculated using a method approved by the commission.

**DECORATIVE GAS APPLIANCE** is a gas appliance that is designed or installed for visual effect only, cannot burn solid wood, and simulates a fire in a fireplace.

**DEGREE DAY, HEATING**, is a unit, based upon temperature difference and time, used in estimating fuel consumption and specifying nominal annual heating load of a building. For any one day, when the mean temperature is less than 65°F, there exist as many degree days as there are Fahrenheit degrees difference in temperature between the mean temperature for the day and 65°F. The number of degree days for specific geographical locations are those listed in the Residential Manual. For those localities not listed in the Residential Manual, the number of degree days is as determined by the applicable enforcing agency.

**DEMISING PARTITIONS** are barriers that separate conditioned space from enclosed unconditioned space.

**DEMISING WALL** is a wall that is a demising partition.

**DESIGN CONDITIONS** are the parameters and conditions used to determine the performance requirements of space-conditioning systems. Design conditions for determining design heating and

cooling loads are specified in [Section 144 \(b\)](#) for nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings and in [Section 150 \(h\)](#) for low-rise residential buildings.

**DESIGN HEAT GAIN RATE** is the total calculated heat gain through the building envelope under design conditions.

**DESIGN HEAT LOSS RATE** is the total calculated heat loss through the building envelope under design conditions.

**DIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE** is an enclosed space that is provided with wood heating, is provided with mechanical heating that has a capacity exceeding 10 Btu/(hr.×ft.<sup>2</sup>), or is provided with mechanical cooling that has a capacity exceeding 5 Btu/(hr.×ft.<sup>2</sup>), unless the space-conditioning system is designed and thermostatically controlled to maintain a process environment temperature less than 55°F or to maintain a process environment temperature greater than 90°F for the whole space that the system serves, or unless the space-conditioning system is designed and controlled to be incapable of operating at temperatures above 55°F or incapable of operating at temperatures below 90°F at design conditions.

**DISPLAY LIGHTING** is lighting confined to the area of a display that provides a higher level of illuminance than the level of surrounding ambient illuminance.

**DISPLAY PERIMETER** is the length of an exterior wall in a Group B; Group F, Division 1; or Group M Occupancy that immediately abuts a public sidewalk, measured at the sidewalk level for each story that abuts a public sidewalk.

**DISPLAY, PUBLIC AREA**, is an area for the display of artwork, theme displays, and architectural surfaces in dining and other areas of public access, excluding restrooms and separate banquet rooms.

**DISPLAY, SALES FEATURE**, is an item or items that requires special highlighting to visually attract attention and that is visually set apart from the surrounding area.

**DISPLAY, SALES FEATURE FLOOR**, is a feature display in a retail store, wholesale store, or showroom that requires display lighting.

**DISPLAY, SALES FEATURE WALL**, is the wall display area, in a retail or wholesale space, that is in the vertical plane of permanent walls or partitions, and that is open shelving feature display or face of internally illuminated transparent feature display case within the gross sales wall area.

**DUAL-GLAZED GREENHOUSE WINDOWS** are a type of dual-glazed fenestration product which adds conditioned volume but not conditioned floor area to a building.

**EAST-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true east, including 45°00'00" south of east (SE), but excluding 45°00'00" north of east (NE).

**ECONOMIZER, AIR**, is a ducting arrangement and automatic control system that allows a cooling supply fan system to supply outside air to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.



## 101 (b)

**ECONOMIZER, WATER**, is a system by which the supply air of a cooling system is cooled directly or indirectly by evaporation of water, or other appropriate fluid, in order to reduce or eliminate the need for mechanical cooling.

**EFFECTIVE APERTURE (EA)** is (1) for windows, the visible light transmittance (VLT) times the window wall ratio; and (2) for skylights, the well index times the VLT times the skylight area times 0.85 divided by the gross exterior roof area.

**EFFICACY** is the ratio of light from a lamp to the electrical power consumed (including ballast losses), expressed in lumens per watt.

**ENCLOSED SPACE** is space that is substantially surrounded by solid surfaces.

**ENERGY BUDGET** is the maximum amount of source energy that a proposed building, or portion of a building, can be designed to consume, calculated with the approved procedures specified in Title 24, Part 6.

**ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (EER)** is the ratio of net cooling capacity (in Btu/hr.) to total rate of electrical energy (in watts), of a cooling system under designated operating conditions, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or [Section 112](#).

**ENERGY FACTOR (EF)** is the ratio of energy output to energy consumption of a water heater, expressed in equivalent units, under designated operating conditions over a 24-hour use cycle, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**ENERGY OBTAINED FROM DEPLETABLE SOURCES** is electricity purchased from a public utility, or any energy obtained from coal, oil, natural gas, or liquefied petroleum gases.

**ENERGY OBTAINED FROM NONDEPLETABLE SOURCES** is energy that is not energy obtained from depletable sources.

**ENFORCING AGENCY** is the city, county, or state agency responsible for issuing a building permit.

**ENTIRE BUILDING** is the ensemble of all enclosed space in a building, including the space for which a permit is sought, plus all existing conditioned and unconditioned space within the structure.

**ENVELOPE** means “building envelope.”

**EXFILTRATION** is uncontrolled outward air leakage from inside a building, including leakage through cracks and interstices, around windows and doors, and through any other exterior partition or duct penetration.

**EXTERIOR DOOR** is a door through an exterior partition that is opaque or has a glazed area that is less than or equal to one-half of the door area. Doors with a glazed area of more than one half of the door area are treated as a fenestration product.

**EXTERIOR FLOOR/SOFFIT** is a horizontal exterior partition, or a horizontal demising partition, under conditioned space. For low-rise residential occupancies, exterior floors also include those on grade.

**EXTERIOR PARTITION** is an opaque, translucent, or transparent solid barrier that separates conditioned space from ambient air or space that is not enclosed. For low-rise residential occupancies, exterior partitions also include barriers that separate conditioned space from unconditioned space, or the ground.

**EXTERIOR ROOF/CEILING** is an exterior partition, or a demising partition, that has a slope less than 60 degrees from horizontal, that has conditioned space below, and that is not an exterior door or skylight.

**EXTERIOR ROOF/CEILING AREA** is the area of the exterior surface of exterior roof/ceilings.

**EXTERIOR WALL** is any wall or element of a wall, or any member or group of members, which defines the exterior boundaries or courts of a building and which has a slope of 60 degrees or greater with the horizontal plane. An exterior wall or partition is not an exterior floor/soffit, exterior door, exterior roof/ceiling, window, skylight, or demising wall.

**EXTERIOR WALL AREA** is the area of the opaque exterior surface of exterior walls.

**FENESTRATION PRODUCT** is any transparent or translucent material plus any sash, frame, mullions and dividers, in the envelope of a building, including, but not limited to, windows, sliding glass doors, french doors, skylights, curtain walls, garden windows, and other doors with a glazed area of more than one half of the door area.

**FIELD-FABRICATED FENESTRATION PRODUCT OR EXTERIOR DOOR** is a fenestration product or exterior door whose frame is made at the construction site of standard dimensional lumber or other materials that were not previously cut, or otherwise formed with the specific intention of being used to fabricate a fenestration product or exterior door. Field fabricated does not include site-assembled frame components that were manufactured elsewhere with the intention of being assembled on site (such as knocked-down products, sunspace kits, and curtain walls).

**FIREPLACE** is a hearth and firechamber or similar prepared place in which a solid-fuel fire may be burned, as defined in UBC Section 3102.2 and as further clarified in UBC Section 3102.7; these include, but are not limited to, factory-built fireplaces, masonry fireplaces, and masonry heaters.

**FLOOR/SOFFIT TYPE** is a floor/soffit assembly having a specific heat capacity, framing type, and U-value.

**FRAMED PARTITION** or **ASSEMBLY** is a partition or assembly constructed using separate structural members spaced not more than 32 inches on center.

**GAS HEATING SYSTEM** is a natural gas or liquefied petroleum gas heating system.

## 101 (b)

**GAS LOG** is a self-contained, free-standing, open-flame, gas-burning appliance consisting of a metal frame or base supporting simulated logs, and designed for installation only in a vented fireplace.

**GENERAL LIGHTING** is lighting designed to provide a substantially uniform level of illumination throughout an area, exclusive of any provision for special visual tasks or decorative effect. When designed for lower-than-task illuminance used in conjunction with other specific task lighting systems, it is also called "ambient" lighting.

**GLAZING** (See "fenestration product.")

**GOVERNMENTAL AGENCY** is any public agency or subdivision thereof, including, but not limited to, any agency of the state, a county, a city, a district, an association of governments, or a joint power agency.

**GROSS EXTERIOR ROOF AREA** is the sum of the skylight area and the exterior roof/ceiling area.

**GROSS EXTERIOR WALL AREA** is the sum of the window area, door area, and exterior wall area.

**GROSS SALES FLOOR AREA** is the total area (in square feet) of retail store floor space that is (1) used for the display and sale of merchandise; or (2) associated with that function, including, but not limited to, sales transactions areas, fitting rooms, and circulation areas and entry areas within the space used for display and sale.

**GROSS SALES WALL AREA** is the area (in square feet) of the inside of exterior walls and permanent full-height interior partitions within the gross sales floor area of a retail store that is used for the presentation of merchandise for sale, less the area of openings, doors, windows, baseboards, wainscots, mechanical or structural elements, and other obstructions preventing the use of the area for the presentation of merchandise.

**HABITABLE STORY** is a story that contains space in which humans may work or live in reasonable comfort, and that has at least 50 percent of its volume above grade.

**HEAT CAPACITY (HC)** of an assembly is the amount of heat necessary to raise the temperature of all the components of a unit area in the assembly 1°F. It is calculated as the sum of the average thickness times the density times the specific heat for each component, and is expressed in Btu per square foot per °F.

**HEAT PUMP** is a device that is capable of heating by refrigeration, and that may include a capability for cooling.

**HEATING EQUIPMENT** is equipment used to provide mechanical heating for a room or rooms in a building.

**HEATING SEASONAL PERFORMANCE FACTOR (HSPF)** is the total heating output of a heat pump (in Btu) during its normal use period for heating divided by the total electrical energy input (in watt-hours) during the same period, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

**HI** is the Hydronics Institute.

**HIGH BAY** is a space with luminaires 25 feet or more above the floor.

**HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is a building, other than a hotel/motel, of Occupancy Group R, Division 1 with four or more habitable stories.

**HORIZONTAL GLAZING** (See “skylight.”)

**HOTEL/MOTEL** is a building or buildings incorporating six or more guest rooms or a lobby serving six or more guest rooms, where the guest rooms are intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented, or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests, and all conditioned spaces within the same building envelope. Hotel/motel also includes all conditioned spaces which are (1) on the same property as the hotel/motel, (2) served by the same central heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning system as the hotel/motel, and (3) integrally related to the functioning of the hotel/motel as such, including, but not limited to, exhibition facilities, meeting and conference facilities, food service facilities, lobbies, and laundries.

**HVAC SYSTEM** (See “space-conditioning system.”)

**ICBO** is the International Conference of Building Officials.

**INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED SPACE** is enclosed space, including, but not limited to, unconditioned volume in atria, that (1) is not directly conditioned space; and (2) either (a) has an area-weighted heat transfer coefficient to directly conditioned space exceeding that to the outdoors or to unconditioned space, or (b) is a space through which air from directly conditioned spaces is transferred at a rate exceeding three air changes per hour.

**INFILTRATION** is uncontrolled inward air leakage from outside a building or unconditioned space, including leakage through cracks and interstices, around windows and doors, and through any other exterior or demising partition or pipe or duct penetration.

**INTEGRATED PART LOAD VALUE (IPLV)** is a single-number figure of merit based on part load EER or COP expressing part load efficiency for air-conditioning and heat pump equipment on the basis of weighted operation at various load capacities for the equipment as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations or [Section 112](#).

**ISOLATION DEVICE** is a device that prevents the conditioning of a zone or group of zones in a building while other zones of the building are being conditioned.

**LOW BAY** is a space with luminaires less than 25 feet above the floor.

**LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is a building, other than a hotel/motel that is of Occupancy Group R, Division 1, and is three stories or less, or that is of Occupancy Group R, Division 3.

**LPG** is liquefied petroleum gas.

## 101 (b)

**LUMEN MAINTENANCE DEVICE** is a device capable of automatically adjusting the light output of a lighting system throughout a continuous range to provide a preset level of illumination.

**LUMINAIRE** is a complete lighting unit consisting of a lamp and the parts designed to distribute the light, to position and protect the lamp, and to connect the lamp to the power supply; commonly referred to as "lighting fixtures" or "instruments."

**MANUAL** is capable of being operated by personal intervention.

**MANUFACTURED DEVICE** is any heating, cooling, ventilation, lighting, water heating, refrigeration, cooking, plumbing fitting, insulation, door, fenestration product, or any other appliance, device, equipment, or system subject to [Sections 110 through 119](#) of Title 24, Part 6.

**MANUFACTURED FENESTRATION PRODUCT** is a fenestration product typically assembled before delivery to a job site. A "knocked-down" or partially assembled product sold as a fenestration product must be considered a manufactured fenestration product and meet the rating and labeling requirements for manufactured fenestration products.

**MECHANICAL COOLING** is lowering the temperature within a space using refrigerant compressors or absorbers, desiccant dehumidifiers, or other systems that require energy from depletable sources to directly condition the space. In nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings, cooling of a space by direct or indirect evaporation of water alone is not considered mechanical cooling.

**MECHANICAL HEATING** is raising the temperature within a space using electric resistance heaters, fossil fuel burners, heat pumps, or other systems that require energy from depletable sources to directly condition the space.

**MODELING ASSUMPTIONS** are the conditions (such as weather conditions, thermostat settings and schedules, internal gain schedules, etc.) that are used for calculating a building's annual energy consumption and that are in the Alternative Calculation Methods Manuals.

**MOVABLE SHADING DEVICE** (See "operable shading device.")

**MULTISCENE DIMMING SYSTEM** is a lighting control device that has the capability of setting light levels throughout a continuous range, and that has pre-established settings within the range.

**NEWLY CONDITIONED SPACE** is any space being converted from unconditioned to directly conditioned or indirectly conditioned space, or any space being converted from semiconditioned to directly conditioned or indirectly conditioned space. Newly conditioned space must comply with the requirements for an addition. See [Section 149](#) for nonresidential occupancies and [Section 152](#) for residential occupancies.

**NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDING** is any building which is a Group A, B, E, F, H, M, or S Occupancy

**NOTE:** Requirements for high-rise residential buildings and hotels/motels are included in the nonresidential sections of Title 24, Part 6.

**NONRESIDENTIAL MANUAL** is the manual developed by the commission, under Section 25402.1 (e) of the Public Resources Code, to aid designers, builders, and contractors in meeting the energy efficiency requirements for nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings.

**NORTH-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true north, including 45°00'00" east of north (NE), but excluding 45°00'00' west of north (NW).

**OCCUPANCY SENSOR, LIGHTING**, is a device that automatically turns lights off soon after an area is vacated.

**OCCUPANCY TYPE** is one of the following:

**Auditorium** is the part of a public building where an audience sits in fixed seating, or a room, area, or building with fixed seats used for public meetings or gatherings not specifically for the viewing of dramatic performances.

**Auto repair** is the portion of a building used to repair automotive equipment and/or vehicles, exchange parts, and may include work using an open flame or welding equipment.

**Bank/financial institution** is an area in a public establishment used for conducting financial transactions including the custody, loan, exchange, or issue of money, for the extension of credit, and for facilitating the transmission of funds.

**Classroom, lecture, or training** is a room or area where an audience or class receives instruction.

**Commercial and industrial storage** is a room, area, or building used for storing items.

**Convention, conference, multipurpose and meeting centers** is an assembly room, area, or building that is used for meetings, conventions and multiple purposes, including, but not limited to, dramatic performances, and that has neither fixed seating nor fixed staging.

**Corridor** is a passageway or route into which compartments or rooms open.

**Dining** is a room or rooms in a restaurant or hotel/motel (other than guest rooms) where meals that are served to the customers will be consumed.

**Electrical/mechanical room** is a room in which the building's electrical switchbox or control panels, and/or HVAC controls or equipment is located.

**Exercise center/gymnasium** is a room or building equipped for gymnastics, exercise equipment, or indoor athletic activities.

**Exhibit** is a room or area that is used for exhibitions that has neither fixed seating nor fixed staging.

## 101 (b)

**General commercial and industrial work** is a room, area, or building in which an art, craft, assembly or manufacturing operation is performed.

**High bay:** Luminaires 25 feet or more above the floor.

**Low bay:** Luminaires less than 25 feet above the floor.

**Grocery store** is a room, area, or building that has as its primary purpose the sale of foodstuffs requiring additional preparation prior to consumption.

**Hotel function area** is a hotel room or area such as a hotel ballroom, meeting room, exhibit hall or conference room, together with prefunction areas and other spaces ancillary to its function.

**Hotel lobby** is the contiguous spaces in a hotel/motel between the main entrance and the front desk, including waiting and seating areas, and other spaces encompassing the activities normal to a hotel lobby function.

**Kitchen/food preparation** is a room or area with cooking facilities and/or an area where food is prepared.

**Laundry** is a place where laundering activities occur.

**Library** is a repository for literary materials, such as books, periodicals, newspapers, pamphlets and prints, kept for reading or reference.

**Locker/dressing room** is a room or area for changing clothing, sometimes equipped with lockers.

**Lounge/recreation** is a room used for leisure activities which may be associated with a restaurant or bar.

**Main entry lobby/reception/waiting** is the lobby of a building that is directly located by the main entrance of the building and includes the reception area, sitting areas, and public areas.

**Malls, arcades and atria** are public passageways or concourses that provides access to rows of stores or shops.

**Medical and clinical care** is a room, area, or building that does not provide overnight patient care and that is used to promote the condition of being sound in body or mind through medical, dental, or psychological examination and treatment, including, but not limited to, laboratories and treatment facilities.

**Museum** is a space in which works of artistic, historical, or scientific value are cared for and exhibited.

**Office** is a room, area, or building of UBC Group B Occupancy other than restaurants.

**Precision commercial or industrial work** is a room, area, or building in which an art, craft, assembly or a manufacturing operation is performed involving visual tasks of small size or fine detail such as electronic assembly, fine woodworking, metal lathe operation, fine hand painting and finishing, egg processing operations, or tasks of similar visual difficulty.

**Reception/waiting area** is an area where customers or clients are greeted prior to conducting business.

**Religious worship** is a room, area, or building for worship.

**Restaurant** is a room, area, or building that is a food establishment as defined in Section 27520 of the Health and Safety Code.

**Restroom** is a room or suite of rooms providing personal facilities such as toilets and washbasins.

**Retail and sales** is a room, area, or building in which the primary activity is the sale of merchandise.

**School** is a building or group of buildings that is predominately classrooms and that is used by an organization that provides instruction to students.

**Stairs, active/inactive**, is a series of steps providing passage from one level of a building to another.

**Support area** is a room or area used as a passageway, utility room, storage space, or other type of space associated with or secondary to the function of an occupancy that is listed in these regulations.

**Theater, motion picture**, is an assembly room, a hall, or a building with tiers of rising seats or steps for the showing of motion pictures.

**Theater, performance**, is an assembly room, a hall, or a building with tiers of rising seats or steps for the viewing of dramatic performances, lectures, musical events and similar live performances.

**Vocational room** is a room used to provide training in a special skill to be pursued as a trade.

**Wholesale showroom** is a room where samples of merchandise are displayed.

**OPERABLE SHADING DEVICE** is a device at the interior or exterior of a building or integral with a fenestration product, which is capable of being operated, either manually or automatically, to adjust the amount of solar radiation admitted to the interior of the building.

**OPTIMAL OVERHANG** is an overhang that completely shades the glazing at solar noon on August 21 and substantially exposes the glass at solar noon on December 21.



## 101 (b)

**ORNAMENTAL CHANDELIERS** are ceiling-mounted, close-to-ceiling, or suspended decorative luminaires that use glass, crystal, ornamental metals, or other decorative material and that typically are used in hotel/motels, restaurants, or churches as a significant element in the interior architecture.

**OUTDOOR AIR (Outside air)** is air taken from outdoors and not previously circulated in the building.

**OVERALL HEAT GAIN** is the value obtained in [Section 143 \(b\) 2](#) for determining compliance with the component envelope approach.

**OVERALL HEAT LOSS** is the value obtained in [Section 143 \(b\) 1](#) for determining compliance with the component envelope approach.

**POOR QUALITY LIGHTING TASKS** are visual tasks that require Illuminance Category E or greater, because of the choice of a writing or printing method that produces characters that are of small size or lower contrast than good quality alternatives that are regularly used in offices.

**PRIVATE OFFICE** or **WORK AREA** is an office bounded by 30-inch or higher partitions and is no more than 200 square feet.

**PROCESS** is an activity or treatment that is not related to the space conditioning, lighting, service water heating, or ventilating of a building as it relates to human occupancy.

**PROCESS LOAD** is a load resulting from a process.

**PUBLIC AREAS** are spaces generally open to the public at large, customers or congregation members, or similar spaces where occupants need to be prevented from controlling lights for safety, security, or business reasons.

**PUBLIC FACILITY RESTROOM** is a restroom designed for use by the public.

**RAISED FLOOR** is a floor (partition) over a crawl space, or an unconditioned space, or ambient air.

**READILY ACCESSIBLE** is capable of being reached quickly for operation, repair or inspection, without requiring climbing or removing obstacles, or resorting to access equipment.

**RECOOL** is the cooling of air that has been previously heated by space-conditioning equipment or systems serving the same building.

**RECOVERED ENERGY** is energy used in a building that (1) is mechanically recovered from space conditioning, service water heating, lighting, or process equipment after the energy has performed its original function; (2) provides space conditioning, service water heating, or lighting; and (3) would otherwise be wasted.

**REDUCED FLICKER OPERATION** is the operation of a light, in which the light has a visual flicker less than 30 percent for frequency and modulation.

**REHEAT** is the heating of air that has been previously cooled by cooling equipment or systems or an economizer.

**RELATIVE SOLAR HEAT GAIN** is the ratio of solar heat gain through a fenestration product (corrected for external shading) to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, which is then reradiated, conducted, or convected into the space.

**REPAIR** is the reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance. **Note:** Repairs to low-rise residential buildings are not within the scope of these standards.

**RESIDENTIAL BUILDING** (See “high-rise residential building” and “low-rise residential building.”)

**RESIDENTIAL MANUAL** is the manual developed by the commission, under Section 25402.1 of the Public Resources Code, to aid designers, builders, and contractors in meeting energy efficiency standards for low-rise residential buildings.

**ROOF/CEILING TYPE** is a roof/ceiling assembly having a specific framing type and U-value.

**ROOM CAVITY RATIO (RCR)** is:

(a) For rectangular rooms 
$$\frac{5H(L + H)}{LW}$$

or

(b) For irregular-shaped rooms 
$$\frac{2.5H \times P}{A}$$

**WHERE:**

$L$  = Length of room.

$W$  = Width of room.

$H$  = Vertical distance from the work plane to the center line of the lighting fixture.

$P$  = Perimeter of room.

$A$  = Area of room.

**RUNOUT** is piping that is no more than 12 feet long and that is connected to a fixture or an individual terminal unit.

**SCONCE** is a wall mounted decorative light fixture.

**SEASONAL ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO (SEER)** means the total cooling output of a central air conditioner in Btu during its normal usage period for cooling divided by the total electrical energy input in watt-hours during the same period, as determined using the applicable test method in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations.

## 101 (b)

**SEMICONDITIONED SPACE** is an enclosed nonresidential space that is provided with wood heating, cooling by direct or indirect evaporation of water, mechanical heating that has a capacity of 10 Btu/(hr.×ft.<sup>2</sup>) or less, mechanical cooling that has a capacity of 5 Btu/(hr.×ft.<sup>2</sup>) or less, or is maintained for a process environment as set forth in the definition of “directly conditioned space.”

**SERVICE WATER HEATING** is heating of water for sanitary purposes for human occupancy, other than for comfort heating.

**SHADING** is the protection from heat gains because of direct solar radiation by permanently attached exterior devices or building elements, interior shading devices, glazing material, or adherent materials. Permanently attached means (a) attached with fasteners that require additional tools to remove (as opposed to clips, hooks, latches, snaps, or ties); or (b) required by the UBC for emergency egress to be removable from the interior without the use of tools.

**SHADING COEFFICIENT (SC)** is the ratio of the solar heat gain through a fenestration product to the solar heat gain through an unshaded 1/8-inch-thick clear double strength glass under the same set of conditions. For nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings, this shall exclude the effects of mullions, frames, sashes, and interior and exterior shading devices.

**SITE SOLAR ENERGY** is natural daylighting, or thermal, chemical, or electrical energy derived from direct conversion of incident solar radiation at the building site.

**SKYLIGHT** is glazing having a slope less than 60 degrees from the horizontal with conditioned space below, except for purposes of complying with [Section 151 \(f\)](#), where a skylight is glazing having a slope not exceeding 4.76 degrees (1:12) from the horizontal.

**SKYLIGHT AREA** is the area of the surface of a skylight, plus the area of the frame, sash, and mullions.

**SKYLIGHT TYPE** is a skylight assembly having a specific solar heat gain coefficient, whether translucent or transparent, and U-value.

**SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT (SHGC)** is the ratio of the solar heat gain entering the space through the fenestration area to the incident solar radiation. Solar heat gain includes directly transmitted solar heat and absorbed solar radiation, which is then reradiated, conducted, or convected into the space.

**SOURCE ENERGY** is the energy that is used at a site and consumed in producing and in delivering energy to a site, including, but not limited to, power generation, transmission and distribution losses, and that is used to perform a specific function, such as space conditioning, lighting or water heating. [Table 1-B](#) contains the conversion factors for converting site to source energy.

**SOUTH-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true south including 45°00'00" west of south (SW), but excluding 45°00'00" east of south (SE).

**SPA** is a vessel that contains heated water in which humans can immerse themselves, is not a pool, and is not a bathtub.

**SPACE-CONDITIONING SYSTEM** is a system that provides either collectively or individually heating, ventilating, or cooling within or associated with conditioned spaces in a building.

**SMACNA** is the Sheet Metal and Air-conditioning Contractors National Association.

**SYSTEM** is a combination of equipment, controls, accessories, interconnecting means, or terminal elements by which energy is transformed to perform a specific function, such as space conditioning, service water heating, or lighting.

**TASK-ORIENTED LIGHTING** is lighting that is designed specifically to illuminate a task location, and that is generally confined to the task location.

**THERMAL MASS** is solid or liquid material used to store heat for later heating use or for reducing cooling requirements.

**THERMAL RESISTANCE (R)** is the resistance of a material or building component to the passage of heat in  $(\text{hr.} \times \text{ft.}^2 \times \text{°F})/\text{Btu}$ .

**THROW DISTANCE** is the distance between the luminaire and the center of the plane lit by the luminaire on a display.

**TUNING** is a lighting control device that allows authorized personnel only to select a single light level within a continuous range.

**UBC** is the 1994 edition of the state-adopted *Uniform Building Code*<sup>TM</sup>.

**UL®** is the Underwriters Laboratory®.

**UMC** is the 1997 edition of the state-adopted *Uniform Mechanical Code*<sup>TM</sup>.

**UNCONDITIONED SPACE** is enclosed space within a building that is not directly conditioned, indirectly conditioned, or semiconditioned space.

**UNIT INTERIOR MASS CAPACITY (UIMC)** is the amount of effective heat capacity per unit of thermal mass, taking into account the type of mass material, thickness, specific heat, density and surface area.

**U-VALUE** is the overall coefficient of thermal transmittance of a construction assembly, in  $\text{Btu}/(\text{hr.} \times \text{ft.}^2 \times \text{°F})$ , including air film resistance at both surfaces.

**VAPOR BARRIER** is a material that has a permeance of one perm or less and that provides resistance to the transmission of water vapor.

**VARIABLE AIR VOLUME (VAV) SYSTEM** is a space-conditioning system that maintains comfort levels by varying the volume of conditioned air to the zones served.

**101 (b)**

**VERY VALUABLE MERCHANDISE** is rare or precious objects, including, but not limited to, jewelry, coins, small art objects, crystal, china, ceramics, or silver, the selling of which involves customer inspection of very fine detail from outside of a locked case.

**VISIBLE LIGHT TRANSMITTANCE (VLT)** is the ratio (expressed as a decimal) of visible light that is transmitted through a glazing material to the light that strikes the material.

**WALL TYPE** is a wall assembly having a specific heat capacity, framing type, and U-value.

**WELL INDEX** is the ratio of the amount of visible light leaving a skylight well to the amount of visible light entering the skylight well and is calculated as follows:

(a) For rectangular wells:

$$\left( \frac{\text{Well height} (\text{well length} + \text{well width})}{2 \times \text{well length} \times \text{well width}} \right);$$

**or**

(b) For irregular-shaped wells:

$$\left( \frac{\text{Well height} \times \text{well perimeter}}{4 \times \text{well area}} \right)$$

Where the length, width, perimeter, and area are measured at the bottom of the well, and  $R$  is the weighted average reflectance of the walls of the well.

**WEST-FACING** is oriented to within 45 degrees of true west, including 45°00'00" north of due west (NW), but excluding 45°00'00" south of west (SW).

**WINDOW** is glazing that is not a skylight.

**WINDOW AREA** is the area of the surface of a window, plus the area of the frame, sash, and mullions.

**WINDOW TYPE** is a window assembly having a specific solar heat gain coefficient, relative solar heat gain, and U-value.

**WINDOW WALL RATIO** is the ratio of the window area to the gross exterior wall area.

**WOOD HEATER** is an enclosed wood-burning appliance used for space heating and/or domestic water heating, and which meets the definition in Federal Register, Volume 52, Number 32, February 18, 1987.

**WOOD STOVE** (See "wood heater.")

**ZONE, LIGHTING**, is a space or group of spaces within a building that has sufficiently similar requirements so that lighting can be automatically controlled in unison throughout the zone by an illumination-controlling device or devices, and does not exceed one floor.

**ZONE, SPACE-CONDITIONING**, is a space or group of spaces within a building with sufficiently similar comfort conditioning requirements so that comfort conditions, as specified in [Section 144 \(b\) 3](#) or [150 \(h\)](#), as applicable, can be maintained throughout the zone by a single controlling device.

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**





**102 TABLE 1-B – 109**

**SECTION 102 – CALCULATION OF SOURCE ENERGY CONSUMPTION**

When calculating source energy consumption, consumption of electricity, natural gas, fuel oil, and LPG shall be converted to Btu at the rates shown in Table 1-B.

**TABLE 1-B—SOURCE ENERGY CONVERSION RATES**

<b>ENERGY SOURCE</b>	<b>BTU PER UNIT CONSUMPTION</b>
Electricity	10,239 Btu/kilowatt-hour
Natural Gas	100,000 Btu/therm
Fuel Oil	138,400 Btu/gallon
LPG	91,080 Btu/gallon

**SECTION 103 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 104 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 105 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 106 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 107 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 108 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 109 — Reserved.**

**SUBCHAPTER 2**  
**ALL OCCUPANCIES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE**  
**MANUFACTURE, CONSTRUCTION AND INSTALLATION OF SYSTEMS,**  
**EQUIPMENT AND BUILDING COMPONENTS**

**SECTION 110 – SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT—GENERAL**

Sections 111 through 119 establish requirements for the manufacture, construction, and installation of certain systems, equipment and building components that are installed in buildings regulated by Title 24, Part 6. Systems, equipment and building components listed below may be installed only if:

- (a) The manufacturer has certified that the system, equipment or building component complies with the applicable manufacture provisions of Sections 111 through 119; and
- (b) The system, equipment or building component complies with the applicable installation provisions of Sections 111 through 119.

No system, equipment or building component covered by the provisions of Sections 111 through 119 that is not certified or that fails to comply with the applicable installation requirements may be installed in a building regulated by Title 24, Part 6.

The systems, equipment and building components covered are:

- Appliances regulated by the Appliance Efficiency Regulations ([Section 111](#)).
- Other space-conditioning equipment ([Section 112](#)).
- Other service water-heating systems and equipment ([Section 113](#)).
- Pool and spa heating systems and equipment ([Section 114](#)).
- Gas appliances ([Section 115](#)).
- Doors, windows, and fenestration products ([Section 116](#)).
- Joints and other openings ([Section 117](#)).
- Insulation ([Section 118](#)).
- Lighting control devices ([Section 119](#)).

**SECTION 111 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLIANCES REGULATED BY THE APPLIANCE EFFICIENCY REGULATIONS**

Any appliance for which there is a California standard established in the Appliance Efficiency Regulations may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified to the commission, as specified in those regulations, that the appliance complies with the applicable standard for that appliance. See [Appendix 1-A](#) for availability of directories of certified appliances.

**SECTION 112 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT**

**Certification by Manufacturers.** Any space-conditioning equipment listed in this section may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the equipment complies with all the applicable requirements of this section.

- (a) **Efficiency.** Equipment shall meet the applicable requirements of [Table 1-C](#), subject to the following:
1. If more than one standard is listed in [Table 1-C](#), the equipment shall meet all the standards listed; and
  2. If more than one test method is listed in [Table 1-C](#), the equipment shall comply with the applicable standard when tested with each test method; and
  3. Where equipment can serve more than one function, such as both heating and cooling, or both space heating and water heating, it shall comply with all the requirements applicable to each function; and
  4. Where a requirement is for equipment rated at its "maximum rated capacity" or "minimum rated capacity," the capacity shall be as provided for and allowed by the controls, during steady-state operation.

**TABLE 1-C—EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR  
SPACE-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENT	WHEN TESTED WITH:
<b>UNITARY AIR CONDITIONERS AND HEAT PUMPS, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED ≥ 135,000 BTU/HR.</b>				
Air conditioners, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	—	8.5 EER	ARI 360-93
	< 760,000 Btu/hr. ≥ 760,000 Btu/hr.	—	7.5 IPLV 8.2 EER 7.5 IPLV	ARI 360-93
Air conditioners, water or evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	—	9.6 EER 9.0 IPLV	ARI 360-93 STD-201 (96)
Heat pumps, air cooled, cooling mode	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	—	8.5 EER	ARI 340-93
	< 760,000 Btu/hr. ≥ 760,000 Btu/hr.	—	7.5 IPLV 8.2 EER 7.5 IPLV	ARI 340-93
Heat pumps, air cooled, heating mode	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	47°F 17°F	2.9 COP 2.0 COP	ARI 340-93
Condensing units, air cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	—	9.9 EER 11.0 IPLV	ARI 365-94
Condensing units, water or evaporatively cooled	≥ 135,000 Btu/hr.	—	12.9 EER 12.9 IPLV	ARI 365-94 STD-201 (96)
<b>WATER CHILLING PACKAGES, WATER AND AIR COOLED, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED</b>				
Water cooled	< 150 tons	—	3.8 COP 3.9 IPLV	STD-201 (96) ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
	≥ 150 < 300 tons	—	4.2 COP 4.5 IPLV	STD-201 (96) ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
	≥ 300 tons	With CFC refrigerants with ozone-depletion factors greater than those for R-22	5.2 COP 5.3 IPLV	STD-201 (96) ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
Water cooled		All others	4.7 COP 4.8 IPLV	STD-201 (96) ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
Air cooled	< 150 tons	With condenser	2.7 COP 2.8 IPLV	ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
	≥ 150 tons	With condenser	2.5 COP 2.5 IPLV	ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
	All sizes	Without condenser	3.1 COP 3.2 IPLV	ARI 550-92 ARI 590-92
<b>BOILERS</b>				
Gas-fired	≥ 300,000 Btu/hr.	At both maximum and minimum rated capacity	80% combustion efficiency	ANSI Z21.13-91 HI Heating Boiler Standard 89 ASME PTC 4.1-64 ANSI/UL 795-94
Oil-fired	≥ 225,000 < 300,000 Btu/hr.		80% AFUE	10 C.F.R. Part 430, Appendix N
	≥ 300,000 Btu/hr.	At both maximum and minimum rated capacity	83% combustion efficiency	HI Heating Boiler Standard 89 ASME PTC 4.1-64 ANSI/UL 726-90
Oil-fired (residual)	≥ 300,000 Btu/hr.	At both maximum and minimum rated capacity	83% combustion efficiency	HI Heating Boiler Standard 89 ASME PTC 4.1-64

**TABLE 1-C—EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENTS FOR  
SPACE-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT  
(Continued)**

EQUIPMENT TYPE	SIZE CATEGORY	SUBCATEGORY OR RATING CONDITION	EFFICIENCY REQUIREMENT	WHEN TESTED WITH:
<b>WARM-AIR FURNACES AND COMBINATION WARM-AIR FURNACES/AIR-CONDITIONING UNITS</b>				
Gas-fired	≥ 225,000 Btu/hr.	At maximum rated capacity	80% thermal efficiency	ANSI Z21.47-93
		At maximum rated capacity	78% thermal efficiency	ANSI Z21.47-93
Oil-fired	≥ 225,000 Btu/hr.	At both maximum and minimum rated capacity	81% thermal efficiency	ANSI/UL 727-86
<b>UNIT HEATERS</b>				
Oil-fired	All sizes	At maximum rated capacity	81% thermal efficiency	UL 731-95
	All sizes	At maximum rated capacity	81% thermal efficiency	UL 731-95

(b) **Controls for Heat Pumps with Supplementary Electric Resistance Heaters.** Heat pumps with supplementary electric resistance heaters shall have controls:

1. That prevent supplementary heater operation when the heating load can be met by the heat pump alone; and
2. In which the cut-on temperature for compression heating is higher than the cut-on temperature for supplementary heating, and the cut-off temperature for compression heating is higher than the cut-off temperature for supplementary heating.

**EXCEPTION to Section 112 (b):** The controls may allow supplementary heater operation during:

- A. Defrost; and
- B. Transient periods such as start-ups and following room thermostat setpoint advance, if the controls provide preferential rate control, intelligent recovery, staging, ramping or another control mechanism designed to preclude the unnecessary operation of supplementary heating.

## **SECTION 113 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SERVICE WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT**

(a) **Certification by Manufacturers.** Any service water-heating system or equipment may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the system or equipment complies with all of the requirements of this subsection for that system or equipment.

1. **Temperature controls for service water-heating systems.** Service water-heating systems shall be equipped with automatic temperature controls capable of adjustment from the lowest to the highest acceptable temperature settings for the intended use as listed in Table 3, Chapter 45 of the 1995 ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume.

**EXCEPTION to Section 113 (a) 1:** Residential occupancies.

(b) **Installation.** Any service water-heating system or equipment may be installed only if the system or equipment complies with all of the applicable requirements of this subsection for the system or equipment.

1. **Outlet temperature controls.** On systems that have a total capacity greater than 167,000 Btu/hr., outlets that require higher than service water temperatures as listed in the 1995 ASHRAE Handbook, HVAC Applications Volume, shall have separate remote heaters, heat exchangers, or boosters to supply the outlet with the higher temperature.
2. **Pumps for circulating systems.** Circulating service water-heating systems shall have a control capable of automatically turning off the circulating pump when hot water is not required.

**EXCEPTION to Section 113 (b) 2:** Residential occupancies.

3. **Temperature controls for public lavatories.** The controls shall limit the outlet temperature to 110°F.
4. **Insulation.** Unfired service water heater storage tanks and backup tanks for solar water-heating systems shall have:
  - A. External insulation with an installed R-value of at least R-12; or
  - B. Internal and external insulation with a combined R-value of at least R-16; or
  - C. The heat loss of the tank surface based on an 80°F water-air temperature difference shall be less than 6.5 Btu per hour per square foot.
5. **Service water heaters in state buildings.** Any new building constructed by the State shall derive its service water heating from a system that provides at least 60 percent of the energy needed for service water heating from site solar energy or recovered energy.

**EXCEPTION to Section 113 (b) 5:** Buildings for which the state architect determines that service water heating from site solar energy or recovered energy is economically or physically infeasible.

## SECTION 114 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR POOL AND SPA HEATING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

(a) **Certification by Manufacturers.** Any pool or spa heating system or equipment may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the system or equipment has all of the following:

1. **Efficiency.** A thermal efficiency for gas-fired systems of at least 78 percent, when tested according to ANSI Standard Z21.56-1994; and

**114 (a) 2 – (b)**

2. **On-off switch.** A readily accessible on-off switch, mounted on the outside of the heater that allows shutting off the heater without adjusting the thermostat setting; and
3. **Instructions.** A permanent, easily readable, and weatherproof plate or card that gives instruction for the energy efficient operation of the pool or spa and for the proper care of pool or spa water when a cover is used; and
4. **Electric resistance heating.** No electric resistance heating; and

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 114 (a) 4:** Listed package units with fully insulated enclosures, and with tight-fitting covers that are insulated to at least R-6.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 114 (a) 4:** Pools or spas deriving at least 60 percent of the annual heating energy from site solar energy or recovered energy.

5. **Pilot light.** No pilot light.

(b) **Installation.** Any pool or spa heating system or equipment shall be installed with all of the following:

1. **Piping.** At least 36 inches of pipe between the filter and the heater to allow for the future addition of solar heating equipment; and
2. **Covers.** A cover for outdoor pools or outdoor spas; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 114 (b) 2:** Pools or spas deriving at least 60 percent of the annual heating energy from site solar energy or recovered energy.

3. **Directional inlets and time switches for pools.** If the system or equipment is for a pool:
  - A. The pool shall have directional inlets that adequately mix the pool water; and
  - B. The circulation pump shall have a time switch that allows the pump to be set to run in the off-peak electric demand period, and for the minimum time necessary to maintain the water in the condition required by applicable public health standards.

**EXCEPTION to Section 114 (b) 3 B:** Where applicable public health standards require on-peak operation.

## SECTION 115 – NATURAL GAS CENTRAL FURNACES, COOKING EQUIPMENT, AND POOL AND SPA HEATERS: PILOT LIGHTS PROHIBITED

Any natural gas system or equipment listed below may be installed only if it does not have a continuously burning pilot light:

- (a) Fan-type central furnaces.
- (b) Household cooking appliances.

**EXCEPTION to Section 115 (b):** Household cooking appliances without an electrical supply voltage connection and in which each pilot consumes less than 150 Btu/hr.

- (c) Pool heaters.
- (d) Spa heaters.

## SECTION 116 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR FENESTRATION PRODUCTS AND EXTERIOR DOORS

- (a) **Certification of Fenestration Products and Exterior Doors.** Any fenestration product and exterior door, other than field-fabricated fenestration products and field-fabricated exterior doors, may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified to the commission, or if an independent certifying organization approved by the commission has certified, that the product complies with all of the applicable requirements of this subsection.
  1. **Air leakage.** Manufactured fenestration products and exterior doors shall have air infiltration rates not exceeding 0.3 cfm/ft.<sup>2</sup> of window area, 0.3 cfm/ft.<sup>2</sup> of door area for residential doors, 0.3 cfm/ft.<sup>2</sup> of door area for nonresidential single doors (swinging and sliding), and 1.0 cfm/ft.<sup>2</sup> for nonresidential double doors (swinging), when tested according to NFRC-400-95 or ASTM E 283-91 at a pressure differential of 75 pascals or 1.57 pounds/ft.<sup>2</sup>, incorporated herein by reference.
  2. **U-value and SHGC.** Fenestration products shall:
    - A. Be certified for overall U-values as rated in accordance with the National Fenestration Rating Council's NFRC-100-91 (1991), or NFRC 100 (1997) and be certified for overall SHGC, as rated in accordance with the National Fenestration Rating Council's NFRC 200 (1995), incorporated herein by reference, or such values shall be certified in accordance with a default table method set forth in Section 10-111; and
    - B. Have a temporary label meeting the requirements of [Section 10-111 \(a\) \(1\)](#), not to be removed before inspection by the enforcement agency, listing the certified U-value and SHGC, and certifying that the air infiltration requirements of Section 116 (a) 1 are met for each product line; and



**116 (a) 2 – (b)**

- C. Have a permanent label meeting the requirements of [Section 10-111 \(a\) \(2\)](#) if the product is rated using NFRC procedures.

**EXCEPTION to Section 116 (a):** Fenestration products removed and reinstalled as part of a building alteration or addition.

**EXCEPTION to Section 116 (a) 2:** Glazed wall systems and overhead glazing in buildings covered by the nonresidential standards shall have SHGC and U-values determined in accordance with NFRC procedures or default values set forth in [Section 116 \(a\) 2 A](#). Temporary and permanent labels are not required.

- (b) **Installation of Field-fabricated Fenestration Products and Exterior Doors.** Field-fabricated fenestration products and exterior doors shall be caulked between the fenestration products or exterior door and the building, and shall be weatherstripped.

**EXCEPTION to Section 116 (b):** Unframed glass doors and fire doors.

TABLE 1-D—DEFAULT FENESTRATION PRODUCT U-VALUES

FRAME TYPE <sup>1</sup>	PRODUCT TYPE	SINGLE PANE U-VALUE	DOUBLE PANE U-VALUE <sup>2</sup>
Metal	Operable	1.28	0.87
Metal	Fixed	1.19	0.72
Metal	Greenhouse/garden window	2.26	1.40
Metal	Doors	1.25	0.85
Metal	Skylight	1.72	0.94
Metal, Thermal Break	Operable		0.71
Metal, Thermal Break	Fixed		0.60
Metal, Thermal Break	Greenhouse/garden window		1.12
Metal, Thermal Break	Doors		0.64
Metal, Thermal Break	Skylight		0.80
Nonmetal	Operable	0.99	0.60
Nonmetal	Fixed	1.04	0.57
Nonmetal	Doors	0.99	0.55
Nonmetal	Greenhouse/garden windows	1.94	1.06
Nonmetal	Skylight	1.47	0.68

<sup>1</sup> Metal includes any field-fabricated product with metal cladding. Nonmetal-framed manufactured fenestration products with metal cladding must add 0.04 to the listed U-value. Nonmetal frame types can include metal fasteners, hardware, and door thresholds. Thermal break product design characteristics are:

- a. The material used as the thermal break must have a thermal conductivity of not more than 3.6 Btu-inch/hr./ft.<sup>2</sup>/°F,
- b. The thermal break must produce a gap of not less than 0.210 inch, and
- c. All metal members of the fenestration product exposed to interior and exterior air must incorporate a thermal break meeting the criteria in Items a. and b. above.

In addition, the fenestration product must be clearly labeled by the manufacturer that it qualifies as a thermally broken product in accordance with this standard.

<sup>2</sup>For all dual-glazed fenestration products, adjust the listed U-values as follows:

- a. Subtract 0.05 for spacers of 7/16 inch or wider.
- b. Subtract 0.05 for products certified by the manufacturer as low-E glazing.
- c. Add 0.05 for products with dividers between panes if spacer is less than 7/16 inch wide.
- d. Add 0.05 to any product with true divided lite (dividers through the panes).

**TABLE 1-E—DEFAULT SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT**

FRAME TYPE	PRODUCT	GLAZING	TOTAL WINDOW SHGC	
			Single Pane	Double Pane
Metal	Operable	Uncoated	0.80	0.70
Metal	Fixed	Uncoated	0.83	0.73
Metal	Operable	Tinted	0.67	0.59
Metal	Fixed	Tinted	0.68	0.60
Metal, Thermal Break	Operable	Uncoated	0.72	0.63
Metal, Thermal Break	Fixed	Uncoated	0.78	0.69
Metal, Thermal Break	Operable	Tinted	0.60	0.53
Metal, Thermal Break	Fixed	Tinted	0.65	0.57
Nonmetal	Operable	Uncoated	0.74	0.65
Nonmetal	Fixed	Uncoated	0.76	0.67
Nonmetal	Operable	Tinted	0.60	0.53
Nonmetal	Fixed	Tinted	0.63	0.55

SHGC = Solar Heat Gain Coefficient.

**SECTION 117 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR JOINTS AND OTHER OPENINGS**

Joints and other openings in the building envelope that are potential sources of air leakage shall be caulked, gasketed, weatherstripped, or otherwise sealed to limit infiltration and exfiltration.

**SECTION 118 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR INSULATION**

- (a) **Certification by Manufacturers.** Any insulation of the type and form listed below may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified that the insulation complies with the California Quality Standards for Insulating Material, Title 20, Chapter 4, Article 3. See [Appendix 1-A](#) for availability of directories of certified insulating material.

TYPE	FORM
Aluminum foil	Reflective foil
Cellular glass	Board form
Cellulose fiber	Loose fill and spray applied
Mineral aggregate	Board form
Mineral fiber	Blankets, board form, loose fill
Perlite	Loose fill
Phenolic	Board form
Polystyrene	Board form, molded extruded
Polyurethane	Board form and field applied
Polyisocyanurate	Board form and field applied
Urea formaldehyde	Foam field applied
Vermiculite	Loose fill

- (b) **Installation of Urea Formaldehyde Foam Insulation.** Urea formaldehyde foam insulation may be applied or installed only if:
1. It is installed in exterior side walls; and
  2. A four-mil-thick plastic polyethylene vapor barrier or equivalent plastic sheeting vapor barrier is installed between the urea formaldehyde foam insulation and the interior space in all applications.
- (c) **Flamespread Rating.** All insulating material shall be installed in compliance with the flamespread rating and smoke density requirements of Section 707 of the UBC.
- (d) **Installation of Insulation in Existing Buildings.** Insulation installed in an existing attic, or on an existing duct or water heater, shall comply with the applicable requirements of this subsection. If a contractor installs the insulation, the contractor shall certify to the customer, in writing, that the insulation meets the applicable requirements of this subsection.
1. **Attics.** If insulation is installed in the existing attic of a low-rise residential building, the R-value of the total amount of insulation (after addition of insulation to the amount, if any, already in the attic) shall be at least R-30, if the building is located in an area that has less than 5,000 heating degree days, or R-38 if the building is located in an area that has 5,000 heating degree days or more.
 

**EXCEPTION to Section 118 (d) 1:** Where the accessible space in the attic is not large enough to accommodate the required R-value, the entire accessible space shall be filled with insulation provided such installation does not violate Section 1505.3 of Title 24, Part 2.
  2. **Water heaters.** If external insulation is installed on an existing unfired water storage tank or on an existing back-up tank for a solar water-heating system, it shall have an R-value of at least R-12, or the heat loss of the tank surface based on an 80°F water-air temperature difference shall be less than 6.5 Btu per hour per square foot.
  3. **Ducts.** If insulation is installed on an existing space-conditioning duct, it shall comply with Section 604 of the UMC.
- (e) **Demising Walls in Nonresidential Buildings.** The opaque portions of framed demising walls in nonresidential buildings shall have insulation with an installed R-value of no less than R-11 between framing members.

## SECTION 119 – MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

Any automatic time switch control device, occupant-sensing device, automatic daylighting control device, lumen maintenance control device, or interior photocell sensor device may be installed only if the manufacturer has certified to the commission, that the device complies with all of the applicable requirements of [Subsections \(a\) through \(g\)](#), and if the device is installed in compliance with [Subsection \(h\)](#).

**119 (a) – (d) 2**

- (a) **All Devices: Instructions for Installation and Calibration.** The manufacturer shall provide step-by-step instructions for installation and start-up calibration of the device.
- (b) **All Devices: Status Signal.** The device shall have an indicator that visibly or audibly informs the device operator that it is operating properly, or that it has failed or malfunctioned.

**EXCEPTION to Section 119 (b):** Photocell sensors or other devices where a status signal is infeasible because of inadequate power.

- (c) **Automatic Time Switch Control Devices.** Automatic time switch control devices shall:
  - 1. Be capable of programming different schedules for weekdays and weekends; and
  - 2. Have program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of the device's program and time setting for at least 10 hours if power is interrupted.
- (d) **Occupant-sensing Devices.** Occupant-sensing devices shall be capable of automatically turning off all the lights in an area no more than 30 minutes after the area has been vacated. In addition, ultrasonic and microwave devices shall have a built-in mechanism that allows calibration of the sensitivity of the device to room movement in order to reduce the false sensing of occupants, and shall comply with either Item 1 or 2 below, as applicable:
  - 1. If the device emits ultrasonic radiation as a signal for sensing occupants within an area, the device shall:
    - A. Have had a Radiation Safety Abbreviated Report submitted to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health, Federal Food and Drug Administration, under 21 Code of Federal Regulations, Section 1002.12 (1996), and a copy of the report shall have been submitted to the California Energy Commission; and
    - B. Emit no audible sound; and
    - C. Not emit ultrasound in excess of the following decibel (dB) values, measured no more than five feet from the source, on axis:

<b>MIDFREQUENCY OF SOUND PRESSURE THIRD-OCTAVE BAND (in kHz)</b>	<b>MAXIMUM dB LEVEL WITHIN THIRD-OCTAVE BAND (in dB reference 20 micropascals)</b>
Less than 20	80
20 or more to less than 25	105
25 or more to less than 31.5	110
31.5 or more	115

- 2. If the device emits microwave radiation as a signal for sensing occupants within the area, the device shall:

- A. Comply with all applicable provisions in 47 Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 2 and 15 (1996), and have an approved Federal Communications Commission Identifier that appears on all units of the device and that has been submitted to the commission; and
- B. Not emit radiation in excess of one milliwatt per square centimeter measured at no more than five centimeters from the emission surface of the device; and
- C. Have permanently affixed to it installation instructions recommending that it be installed at least 12 inches from any area normally used by room occupants.

(e) **Automatic Daylighting Control Devices.** Automatic daylighting control devices shall:

- 1. Be capable of reducing the light output of the general lighting of the controlled area by at least one half while maintaining a uniform level of illuminance throughout the area; and
- 2. If the device is a dimmer, provide electrical outputs to lamps for reduced flicker operation through the dimming range and without causing premature lamp failure; and
- 3. If the device is a stepped dimming system, incorporate time-delay circuits to prevent cycling of light level changes of less than three minutes; and
- 4. If the device uses step switching with separate on and off settings for the steps, have sufficient separation (deadband) of on and off points to prevent cycling; and
- 5. Have provided by the manufacturer step-by-step instructions for installation and start-up calibration to design footcandle levels.

(f) **Lumen Maintenance Control Devices.** Lumen maintenance control devices shall:

- 1. Be capable of reducing the light output of the general lighting of the controlled area by at least 30 percent while maintaining a uniform illuminance throughout the area; and
- 2. Provide electrical outputs to lamps for reduced flicker operation through the dimming range and without causing premature lamp failure; and
- 3. Incorporate an alarm, either audible or visible, to announce when a specified setpoint has been reached; and
- 4. Have provided by the manufacturer step-by-step instructions for installation and start-up calibration to design footcandle levels.

(g) **Interior Photocell Sensor Devices.** Interior photocell sensors shall not have a mechanical slide cover or other device that permits easy unauthorized disabling of the control, and shall not be incorporated into a wall-mounted occupant-sensing device.

**119 (h)**

- (h) **Installation in Accordance with Manufacturer's Instructions.** If an automatic time switch control device, occupant-sensing device, automatic daylighting control device, lumen maintenance control device, or interior photocell sensor device is installed, it shall comply with both Items 1 and 2 below.
1. The device shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions; and
  2. Automatic daylighting control devices and lumen maintenance control devices shall:
    - A. Be installed so that automatic daylighting control devices control only luminaires within the daylit area; and
    - B. Have photocell sensors that are either ceiling mounted or located so that they are accessible only to authorized personnel, and that are located so that they maintain adequate illumination in the area according to the designer's or manufacturer's instructions.

**SUBCHAPTER 3**  
**NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL**  
**OCCUPANCIES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE-**  
**CONDITIONING AND SERVICE WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS**  
**AND EQUIPMENT**

**SECTION 120 – SPACE-CONDITIONING AND SERVICE WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT — GENERAL**

Sections 121 through 129 establish requirements for the design and installation of space-conditioning and service water-heating systems and equipment in nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings subject to [Title 24, Part 6](#). All such buildings shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 121 through 129.

**SECTION 121 – REQUIREMENTS FOR VENTILATION**

(a) **General Requirements.**

1. All enclosed spaces in a building that are normally used by humans shall be ventilated in accordance with the requirements of this section.

**NOTE:** In addition to meeting the requirements of this section, for those occupancies where unusual contaminants are present or anticipated (such as commercial dry cleaners, coin-operated dry cleaners, bars and cocktail lounges, auto repair workshops, smoking lounges, barber shops, beauty shops), it is recommended to use local exhaust ventilation and enclosure to capture the contaminants and discharge them directly outdoors.

2. The outdoor air-ventilation rate and air-distribution assumptions made in the design of the ventilating system shall be clearly identified on the plans required by [Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1](#).

(b) **Design Requirements for Minimum Quantities of Outdoor Air.** Every space in a building shall be designed to have outdoor air ventilation according to Item 1 or 2 below:

1. **Natural ventilation.** Natural ventilation may be provided for spaces that:
  - A. Are within 20 feet of an operable wall or roof opening through which outdoor air flows, which has an openable area more than five percent of the conditioned floor area of the space, and which is readily accessible to occupants of the space at all times when the space is occupied; and
  - B. Have a direct outdoor air flow from the operable wall or roof opening, unobstructed by walls or doors.



**121 (b) 2 – (c) 1**

2. **Mechanical ventilation.** Each space that is not naturally ventilated under Item 1 above shall be ventilated with a mechanical system capable of providing an outdoor air rate no less than the larger of:
  - A. The conditioned floor area of the space times the applicable ventilation rate from Table 1-F; or
  - B. 15 cfm per person times the expected number of occupants. For spaces without fixed seating, the expected number of occupants shall be assumed to be no less than one half the maximum occupant load assumed for exiting purposes in Chapter 10 of the UBC. For spaces with fixed seating, the expected number of occupants shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 10 of the UBC.

**EXCEPTION to Section 121 (b) 2:** Transfer air. The rate of outdoor air required by Section 121 (b) 2 may be provided with air transferred from other ventilated spaces if:

- A. None of the spaces from which air is transferred have any unusual sources of indoor air contaminants; and
- B. Enough outdoor air is supplied to all spaces combined to meet the requirements of Section 121 (b) 2 for each space individually.

**TABLE 1-F—MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES**

TYPE OF USE	CFM PER SQUARE FOOT OF CONDITIONED FLOOR AREA
Auto repair workshops	1.50
Barber shops	0.40
Bars, cocktail lounges, and casinos	1.50
Beauty shops	0.40
Coin-operated dry cleaning	0.30
Commercial dry cleaning	0.45
High-rise residential	Per UBC Section 1203
Hotel guest rooms (less than 500 sq. ft.)	30 cfm/guest room
Hotel guest rooms (500 sq. ft. or greater)	0.15
Retail stores	0.20
Smoking lounges	1.50
All others	0.15

(c) **Operation and Control Requirements for Minimum Quantities of Outdoor Air.**

1. **Times of occupancy.** The minimum rate of outdoor air required by [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#) shall be supplied to each space at all times when the space is usually occupied.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 121 (c) 1:** Demand control ventilation. The rate of outdoor air provided to an intermittently occupied space may be reduced to 0.15 cfm per square foot of conditioned floor area, if the ventilation system serving the space is controlled by a demand control ventilation device approved by the commission; and:

- A. If the device is a carbon dioxide sensor, it limits the carbon dioxide level to no more than 800 ppm while the space is occupied; and
- B. The sensor for the device is located (1) in the space; or (2) in a return-air stream from the space with no less than one sensor for every 25,000 square feet of habitable space, or no more space than is recommended by the manufacturer, whichever is less.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 121 (c) 1:** Temporary reduction. The rate of outdoor air provided to a space may be reduced below the level required by [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#) for up to five minutes each hour if the average rate each hour is the required rate.

- 2. **Pre-occupancy.** The lesser of the minimum rate of outdoor air required by [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#) or three complete air changes shall be supplied to the entire building during the one-hour period immediately before the building is normally occupied.
- (d) **Ducting for Zonal Heating and Cooling Units.** Where a return plenum is used to distribute outdoor air to a zonal heating or cooling unit which then supplies the air to a space in order to meet the requirements of [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#), the outdoor air shall be ducted to discharge either:
- 1. Within five feet of the unit; or
  - 2. Within 15 feet of the unit, substantially toward the unit, and at a velocity not less than 500 feet per minute.
- (e) **Design and Control Requirements for Quantities of Outdoor Air.** All mechanical ventilation and space-conditioning systems shall be designed with and have installed ductwork, dampers and controls to allow outside air rates to be operated at the larger of (1) the minimum levels specified in [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#); or (2) the rate required for make-up of exhaust systems that are required for a process, for control of odors, or for the removal of contaminants within the space.
- (f) **Completion and Balancing.** Before an occupancy permit is granted for a new building or space, or a new space-conditioning or ventilating system serving a building or space is operated for normal use, all ventilation systems serving the building or space shall be documented in accordance with Title 8, Section 5142 (b) of the California Safety Code (1987) to be providing the minimum ventilation rate specified in [Section 121 \(b\) 2](#), as determined using one of the following procedures:
- 1. **Balancing.** The system shall be balanced in accordance with the National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB) Procedural Standards (1983) or Associated Air Balance Council (AABC) National Standards (1989); or
  - 2. **Outside air certification.** The system shall provide the minimum outside air as shown on the mechanical drawings, and shall be measured by the installing licensed C-20 mechanical contractor and certified by (1) the design mechanical engineer, (2) the installing licensed C-20 mechanical contractor, or (3) the person with overall responsibility for the design of the ventilation system; or

## 121 (f) 3 – 122 (b)

3. **Outside air measurement.** The system shall be equipped with a calibrated local or remote device capable of measuring the quantity of outside air on a continuous basis and displaying that quantity on a readily accessible display device; or
4. Another method approved by the commission.

## SECTION 122 – REQUIRED CONTROLS FOR SPACE-CONDITIONING SYSTEMS

Space-conditioning systems shall be installed with controls that comply with the applicable requirements of Subsections (a) through (g).

- (a) **Thermostatic Controls for Each Zone.** The supply of heating and cooling energy to each space-conditioning zone or dwelling unit shall be controlled by an individual thermostatic control that responds to temperature within the zone and that meets the applicable requirements of Subsection (b).

**EXCEPTION to Section 122 (a):** An independent perimeter heating or cooling system may serve more than one zone without individual thermostatic controls if:

- A. All zones are also served by an interior cooling system;
- B. The perimeter system is designed solely to offset envelope heat losses or gains;
- C. The perimeter system has at least one thermostatic control for each building orientation of 50 feet or more; and
- D. The perimeter system is controlled by at least one thermostat located in one of the zones served by the system.

- (b) **Criteria for Zonal Thermostatic Controls.** The individual thermostatic controls required by Subsection (a) shall meet the following requirements as applicable:

1. Where used to control comfort heating, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, by adjustment or selection of sensors, down to 55°F or lower.
2. Where used to control comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall be capable of being set, locally or remotely, by adjustment or selection of sensors, up to 85°F or higher.
3. Where used to control both comfort heating and comfort cooling, the thermostatic controls shall meet Items 1 and 2 and shall be capable of providing a temperature range or dead band of at least 5°F within which the supply of heating and cooling energy to the zone is shut off or reduced to a minimum.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 122 (b) 3:** Systems with thermostats that require manual changeover between heating and cooling modes.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 122 (b) 1, 2, and 3:** Systems serving zones that must have constant temperatures to prevent degradation of materials, a process, or plants or animals.

(c) **Hotel/Motel Guest Room and High-rise Residential Dwelling Unit Thermostats.** Hotel/motel guest room thermostats shall have:

1. Numeric temperature setpoints in °F; and
2. Setpoint stops accessible only to authorized personnel, to restrict over-heating and over-cooling.

High-rise residential dwelling unit thermostats shall meet the control requirements of Section 150 (i).

(d) **Heat Pump Controls.** All heat pumps with supplementary electric resistance heaters shall be installed with controls that comply with [Section 112 \(b\)](#).

(e) **Shut-off and Reset Controls for Space-conditioning Systems.** Each space-conditioning system shall be installed with controls that comply with Items 1 and 2 below:

1. The control shall be capable of automatically shutting off the system during periods of nonuse and shall have:
  - A. An automatic time switch control device complying with [Section 119 \(c\)](#), with an accessible manual override that allows operation of the system for up to four hours; or
  - B. An occupancy sensor; or
  - C. A four-hour timer that can be manually operated.
2. The control shall automatically restart and temporarily operate the system as required to maintain:
  - A. A setback heating thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical heating; and
  - B. A setup cooling thermostat setpoint if the system provides mechanical cooling.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 122 (e):** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that the system serves an area that must operate continuously.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 122 (e):** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that shutdown, setback, and setup will not result in a decrease in overall building source energy use.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 122 (e):** Systems with full load demands of 2 kw or less, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 122 (e):** Systems serving hotel/motel guest rooms, if they have a readily accessible manual shut-off switch.

## 122 (e) 2 – (g)

**EXCEPTION to Section 122 (e) 1:** Mechanical systems serving retail stores and associated malls, restaurants, grocery stores, churches, and theaters equipped with 7-day programmable timers.

**EXCEPTION to Section 122 (e) 2 A:** Thermostat setback controls are not required in areas where the Winter Median of Extremes outdoor air temperature determined in accordance with [Section 144 \(b\) 4](#) is greater than 32°F.

**EXCEPTION to Section 122 (e) 2 B:** Thermostat setup controls are not required in areas where the Summer Design Dry Bulb 0.5 percent temperature determined in accordance with [Section 144 \(b\) 4](#) is less than 100°F.

- (f) **Dampers for Air Supply and Exhaust Equipment.** Outdoor air supply and exhaust equipment shall be installed with dampers that automatically close upon fan shutdown.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 122 (f):** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that the equipment serves an area that must operate continuously.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 122 (f):** Gravity and other nonelectrical equipment that has readily accessible manual damper controls.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 122 (f):** At combustion air intakes and shaft vents.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 122 (f):** Where prohibited by other provisions of law.

- (g) **Isolation Area Devices.** Each space-conditioning system serving multiple zones with a combined conditioned floor area of more than 25,000 square feet shall be designed, installed, and controlled to serve isolation areas.

1. Each zone, or any combination of zones not exceeding 25,000 square feet, shall be a separate isolation area.
2. Each isolation area shall be provided with isolation devices, such as valves or dampers, that allow the supply of heating or cooling to be setback or shut-off independently of other isolation areas.
3. Each isolation area shall be controlled by a device meeting the requirements of [Section 122 \(e\) 1](#).

**EXCEPTION to Section 122 (g):** A zone need not be isolated if it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcement agency that the zone must be heated or cooled continuously.

## SECTION 123 – REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPE INSULATION

The piping for all space-conditioning and service water-heating systems with fluid temperatures listed in Table 1-G shall have the amount of insulation specified in Subsection (a) or (b). Insulation conductivity shall be determined in accordance with ASTM C 335-95 at the mean temperature listed in Table 1-G, and shall be rounded to the nearest 1/100 Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 123:** Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment certified under Section 111 or 112.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 123:** Piping that conveys fluids with a design operating temperature range between 60°F and 105°F.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 123:** Piping that serves process loads, gas piping, cold domestic water piping, condensate drains, roof drains, vents, or waste piping.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 123:** Where the heat gain or heat loss to or from piping without insulation will not increase building source energy use.

- (a) For insulation with a conductivity in the range shown in Table 1-G for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have the applicable thickness shown in Table 1-G.

**TABLE 1-G—PIPE INSULATION THICKNESS**

FLUID TEMPERATURE RANGE, (°F)	CONDUCTIVITY RANGE (in Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F)	INSULATION MEAN RATING TEMPERATURE (°F)	NOMINAL PIPE DIAMETER (in inches)					
			Runouts up to 2	1 and less	1.25-2	2.50-4	5-6	8 and larger
			INSULATION THICKNESS REQUIRED (in inches)					
Space heating systems (steam, steam condensate and hot water)								
Above 350	0.32-0.34	250	1.5	2.5	2.5	3.0	3.5	3.5
251-350	0.29-0.31	200	1.5	2.0	2.5	2.5	3.5	3.5
201-250	0.27-0.30	150	1.0	1.5	1.5	2.0	2.0	3.5
141-200	0.25-0.29	125	0.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5
105-140	0.24-0.28	100	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5
Service water-heating systems (recirculating sections, all piping in electric trace tape systems, and the first 8 feet of piping from the storage tank for nonrecirculating systems)								
Above 105	0.24-0.28	100	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5
Space cooling systems (chilled water, refrigerant and brine)								
40-60	0.23-0.27	75	0.5	0.5	0.5	1.0	1.0	1.0
Below 40	0.23-0.27	75	1.0	1.0	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5

## 123 (b) – 124 (b) 1

- (b) For insulation with a conductivity outside the range shown in [Table 1-G](#) for the applicable fluid temperature range, the insulation shall have a minimum thickness as calculated with Equation (1-A):

### EQUATION (1-A)—INSULATION THICKNESS EQUATION

$$T = PR \left[ \left( 1 + \frac{t}{PR} \right)^{\frac{K}{k}} - 1 \right]$$

#### WHERE:

- $T$  = Minimum insulation thickness for material with conductivity  $K$ , inches.  
 $PR$  = Pipe actual outside radius, inches.  
 $T$  = Insulation thickness from [Table 1-G](#), inches.  
 $K$  = Conductivity of alternate material at the mean rating temperature indicated in [Table 1-G](#) for the applicable fluid temperature range, in Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.  
 $k$  = The lower value of the conductivity range listed in [Table 1-G](#) for the applicable fluid temperature range, Btu-inch per hour per square foot per °F.

## SECTION 124 – REQUIREMENTS FOR AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM DUCTS AND PLENUMS

- (a) **UMC Compliance.** All air distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, building cavities, mechanical closets, air-handler boxes and support platforms used as ducts or plenums, shall be installed, sealed and insulated to meet the requirements of the 1997 UMC Sections 601, 603, 604, and Standard 6-3, incorporated herein by reference. Portions conveying conditioned air shall either be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2 (or any higher level required by UMC Section 604) or be enclosed entirely in conditioned space. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, aerosol sealant, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.
- (b) **Duct and Plenum Materials.**
1. **Factory-fabricated duct systems.**
    - A. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections and splices, and be UL labeled.
    - B. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181.
    - C. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 or UL 181B.

**2. Field-fabricated duct systems.**

- A. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B.
- B. **Mastic sealants and mesh.**
- i. Sealants shall comply with UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.
  - ii. Sealants for interior applications shall pass ASTM tests C 731 (extrudability after aging) and D 2202 (slump test on vertical surfaces), incorporated herein by reference.
  - iii. Sealants for exterior applications shall pass ASTM tests C 731, C 732 (artificial weathering test), and D 2202, incorporated herein by reference.
  - iv. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.
- C. **Pressure-sensitive tape.** Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B.
- D. **Drawbands used with flexible duct.**
- i. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
  - ii. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.
  - iii. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.
- E. **Aerosol-sealant closures.**
- i. Aerosol sealants shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, 181A, or 181B and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.
  - ii. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.



**125 - 129**

**SECTION 125 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 126 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 127 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 128 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 129 — Reserved.**

**SUBCHAPTER 4**  
**NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL**  
**OCCUPANCIES—MANDATORY REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING**  
**SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT**

**SECTION 130 – LIGHTING SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT—GENERAL**

- (a) Except as provided in Subsection (b), the design and installation of all lighting systems and equipment in nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings subject to [Title 24, Part 6](#), shall comply with the applicable provisions of [Sections 131 through 139](#).
- (b) The design and installation of all lighting systems and equipment in high-rise residential living quarters and in hotel/motel guest rooms shall comply with the following:
1. Luminaires for general lighting in kitchens shall have lamps with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt. A luminaire which is the only lighting in a kitchen will be considered general lighting. General lighting shall be controlled by the most accessible switch(es) in the kitchen.

Additional luminaires to be used only for specific decorative effects need not meet this requirement.

2. Each room containing a water closet shall have at least one luminaire with lamps with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt. If there is more than one luminaire in the room, the high efficacy luminaire shall be switched at an entrance to the room. The efficacy requirement may be met by installing the luminaire meeting this requirement in an adjacent room that has complementary plumbing fixtures.
3. Luminaires installed to meet the 40 lumens per watt requirements of Subsection 1 or 2 shall not contain medium base incandescent lamp sockets, and shall be on separate switches from any incandescent lighting.
4. All incandescent lighting fixtures recessed into insulated ceilings shall be approved for zero-clearance insulation cover (IC) by Underwriters Laboratories or other testing/rating laboratories recognized by the International Conference of Building Officials.

**EXCEPTION to Section 130 (b):** Up to 10 percent of the guest rooms in a hotel/motel need not comply.

## SECTION 131 – LIGHTING CONTROLS THAT MUST BE INSTALLED

(a) **Area Controls.**

1. Each area enclosed by ceiling-height partitions shall have an independent switching or control device. This switching or control device shall be:
  - A. Readily accessible; and
  - B. Located so that a person using the device can see the lights or area controlled by that switch, or so that the area being lit is annunciated; and
  - C. Manually operated, or automatically controlled by an occupant-sensing device that meets the requirements of [Section 119 \(d\)](#).
2. Other devices may be installed in conjunction with the switching or control device provided that they:
  - A. Permit the switching or control device to override the action of all other devices; and
  - B. Reset the mode of any automatic system to normal operation without further action.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 131 (a):** Up to one-half watt per square foot of lighting in any area within a building that must be continuously illuminated for reasons of building security or emergency egress, if:

- A. The area is designated a security or emergency egress area on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under [Section 10-103 \(a\) \(2\)](#) of [Title 24, Part 1](#); and
- B. The area is controlled by switches accessible only to authorized personnel.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 131 (a):** Public areas with switches that are accessible only to authorized personnel.

(b) **Controls to Reduce Lighting.** The general lighting of any enclosed space 100 square feet or larger in which the connected lighting load exceeds 1.0 watts per square foot for the space as a whole, and that has more than one light source (luminaire), shall be controlled so that the load for the lights may be reduced by at least one half while maintaining a reasonably uniform level of illuminance throughout the area. A reasonably uniform reduction of illuminance shall be achieved by:

1. Controlling all lamps or luminaires with dimmers; or
2. Dual switching of alternate rows of luminaires, alternate luminaires, or alternate lamps; or
3. Switching the middle lamps of three lamp luminaires independently of the outer lamps; or
4. Switching each luminaire or each lamp.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 131 (b):** Lights in areas that are controlled by an occupant-sensing device that meets the requirements of Section 119 (d).

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 131 (b):** Lights in corridors.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 131 (b):** Lights in areas that are controlled by an automatic time switch control device that has a timed manual override available at each switch location required by Section 131 (a) and that controls only the lights in the area enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.

(c) **Daylit Areas.** Daylit areas in any enclosed space greater than 250 square feet shall meet the requirements of Items 1 and 2 below

1. Such areas shall have at least one control that:
  - A. Controls only luminaires in the daylit area; and
  - B. Controls at least 50 percent of the lamps or luminaires in the daylit area, in a manner described in Section 131 (b) 1 through 4, independently of all other lamps or luminaires in the enclosed space. The other luminaires in the enclosed space may be controlled in any manner allowed by Section 131 (b) 1 through 4.
2. Such areas shall have controls that control the luminaires in each vertically daylit area separately from the luminaires in each horizontally daylit area.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 131 (c):** Daylit areas where the effective aperture of glazing is equal to or less than 0.1 for vertical glazing and 0.01 for horizontal glazing.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 131 (c):** Daylit areas where existing adjacent structures or natural objects obstruct daylight to the extent that effective use of daylighting is not feasible.

(d) **Shut-off Controls.**

1. For every floor, all interior lighting systems shall be equipped with a separate automatic control to shut off the lighting. This automatic control shall meet the requirements of Section 119 and may be an occupancy sensor, automatic time switch, or other device capable of automatically shutting off the lighting.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 131 (d) 1:** Buildings or separately metered spaces of less than 5,000 square feet of conditioned space.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 131 (d) 1:** Where the system is serving an area that must be continuously lit, or lit in a manner requiring manual operation of the lighting.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 131 (d) 1:** Lighting in corridors, guest rooms, and lodging quarters of high-rise residential buildings and hotel/motels.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 131 (d) 1:** Up to one-half watt per square foot of lighting in any area within a building that must be continuously illuminated for reasons of building security or emergency egress, if:

- A. The area is designated a security or emergency egress area on the plans and specifications submitted to the enforcement agency under Section 10-103 (a) 2 A of Title 24, Part 1; and
- B. The area is controlled by switches accessible only to authorized personnel.

**131 (a) – (b) 4**

2. If an automatic time switch control device is installed to comply with [Section 131 \(d\) 1](#), it shall incorporate an override switching device that:
  - A. Is readily accessible; and
  - B. Is located so that a person using the device can see the lights or the area controlled by that switch, or so that the area being lit is annunciated; and
  - C. Is manually operated; and
  - D. Allows the lighting to remain on for no more than two hours when an override is initiated; and
  - E. Controls an area not exceeding 5,000 square feet.

**EXCEPTION to Section 131 (d) 2 D:** In malls and arcades, auditoriums, single tenant retail spaces, industrial facilities, and arenas, where captive-key override is utilized, override time may exceed two hours.

**EXCEPTION to Section 131 (d) 2 E:** In malls and arcades, auditoriums, single tenant retail spaces, industrial facilities, and arenas, the area controlled may not exceed 20,000 square feet.

3. If an automatic time switch control device is installed to comply with [Section 131 \(d\) 1](#), it shall incorporate an automatic holiday "shut-off" feature that turns off all loads for at least 24 hours, then resumes the normally scheduled operation.

**EXCEPTION to Section 131 (d) 3:** Retail stores and associated malls, restaurants, grocery stores, churches, and theaters.

- (e) **Display Lighting.** Display lighting shall be separately switched on circuits that are 20 amps or less.
- (f) **Exterior Lighting.** Exterior lighting controlled from a lighting panel within the building shall be controlled by a directional photocell or astronomical time switch that automatically turns off the exterior lighting when daylight is available.

**EXCEPTION to Section 131 (f):** Lighting in parking garages, tunnels, and large covered areas that require illumination during daylight hours.

**SECTION 132 – REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING CIRCUITING**

The following shall be tandem wired and shall not use single lamp ballasts:

- (a) Pairs of one-lamp or three-lamp recessed fluorescent luminaires that are (1) on the same switch control, (2) in the same area, and (3) within 10 feet of each other in accessible ceiling spaces; and
- (b) Continuous mounted pendant and continuous surface mounted luminaires.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 132:** Fluorescent lighting luminaires that use electronic high frequency ballasts.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 132:** Single lamp ballasts may be used for odd lamp quantities or in conjunction with emergency battery-ballast units in even-numbered lamp luminaires.

**EXCEPTION to Sections 131 and 132:** Exit signs and illumination subject to Section 1012 or 1013 of the California Building Code, and lighting whose switching is regulated by Article 700 of the California Electrical Code (Title 24, Part 3).

**133 – 139**

**SECTION 133 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 134 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 135 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 136 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 137 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 138 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 139 — Reserved.**

**SUBCHAPTER 5**  
**NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL**  
**OCCUPANCIES—PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE**  
**APPROACHES FOR ACHIEVING ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

**SECTION 140 – CHOICE OF PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE APPROACHES**

The envelope and the space-conditioning, lighting, and service water-heating systems of all nonresidential, high-rise residential, and hotel/motel buildings subject to Title 24, Part 6, shall be designed, constructed, and installed either:

- (a) **Performance Approach** — to use no more source energy from depletable sources than the energy budget, calculated according to Section 141; or
- (b) **Prescriptive Approach** — in accordance with all the applicable requirements of [Sections 142 through 146](#).

**SECTION 141 – PERFORMANCE APPROACH: ENERGY BUDGETS.**

In order to meet the energy budget, a proposed building's use of source energy calculated under Subsection (b) must be no greater than the energy budget calculated under Subsection (a).

- (a) **Energy Budget.** The energy budget for a proposed building is the sum of the space-conditioning, lighting, and service water-heating budgets in Subdivisions 1, 2, and 3 of this subsection, expressed in Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area per year.
  - 1. **Space-conditioning budget.** The space-conditioning budget is the source energy used for space conditioning in a standard building in the climate zone in which the proposed building is located, calculated with a method approved by the commission (expressed in Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area per year), and assuming that:
    - A. The standard building has space heating, space cooling, and ventilation systems that meet, but do not exceed, the minimum efficiency requirements of [Sections 111 and 112](#), and the requirements of [Section 144](#); and
    - B. The performance of the roof/ceiling, walls, floors and soffits, windows, and skylights is equal to an applicable value using the same assembly type from [Table 1-I or 1-J](#); and
    - C. The zoning, the orientation of each building feature, and the gross envelope areas of the standard building are the same as in the proposed building; and



**141 (a) 1 – (b) 1**

- D. The window area of the standard building is the greater of (1) or (2): (1) the window area of the proposed building excluding the window area in demising walls, or 40 percent of the gross exterior wall area of the standard building, whichever is less; or (2) six feet times the display perimeter; and
  - E. The skylight area of the standard building is the same as in the proposed building, or is five percent of the gross exterior roof/ceiling area of the standard building, whichever is less.
2. **Lighting budget.** The lighting budget is the source energy used for lighting in a standard building calculated with a method approved by the commission (expressed in Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area per year), and assuming that:
- A. The lighting power density of the standard building, for areas where no lighting plans or specifications are submitted for permit and the occupancy of the building is known, is the maximum allowed lighting power density calculated according to [Section 146 \(b\) 1](#); and
  - B. The lighting power density of the standard building, for areas where no lighting plans or specifications are submitted for permit, and the occupancy of the building is not known, is 1.2 watts per square foot; and
  - C. The lighting power density of the standard building, for areas where lighting plans and specifications are being submitted for permit, is the maximum allowed lighting power density calculated according to [Section 146 \(b\) 1, 2, or 3](#)
3. **Service water-heating budget.** The service water-heating budget is the source energy used for service water heating in a standard building in the climate zone in which the proposed building is located, calculated with a method approved by the commission (expressed in Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area per year), and assuming that the standard building has a service water-heating system that meets, but does not exceed, the applicable requirements of [Sections 111, 113, and 123](#).
- (b) **Source Energy Use of Proposed Building.** The source energy use of a proposed building is the sum of the space-conditioning, lighting, and service water-heating source energy use calculated in Subdivisions 1, 2, and 3 of this subsection, using the same ACM used to calculate the budget under Subsection (a), and expressed in Btu per square foot of conditioned floor area per year. If any feature of the proposed building, including, but not limited to, the envelope or the space-conditioning, lighting, or service water-heating system, is not included in the building permit application, the energy performance of the feature shall be assumed to be that of the corresponding feature calculated in [Subsection \(a\)](#).
1. **Space-conditioning source energy use.** The space-conditioning source energy use shall be calculated by:
- A. Using a method approved by the commission; and

- B. Using the proposed building's space heating, space cooling, lighting, and ventilation systems, roof and ceiling, walls, floors and soffits, opaque envelope areas, windows, skylights, zoning, and orientation, as shown on the plans and specifications submitted in the building permit application under [Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1](#).
2. **Lighting source energy use.** The lighting source energy use shall be calculated using a method approved by the commission, and using the actual lighting power density calculated under [Section 146 \(a\)](#), including reduction of wattage through controls.
  3. **Service water-heating source energy use.** The service water-heating source energy use shall be calculated using a method approved by the commission, and using the proposed building's actual service water-heating system.
- (c) **Calculation of Budget and Energy Use.** When calculating the energy budget under Subsection (a) and the source energy use under [Subsection \(b\)](#), all of the following rules shall apply:
1. **Methodology.** The methodology, computer programs, inputs, and assumptions approved by the commission shall be used.
  2. **Energy included.** All energy from depletable sources used for space conditioning, lighting, and service water heating shall be included.
  3. **Energy excluded.** The following energy shall be excluded:
    - A. Process loads; and
    - B. Loads of redundant or backup equipment, if the plans submitted under [Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1](#), show controls that will allow the redundant or backup equipment to operate only when the primary equipment is not operating, and if such controls are installed; and
    - C. Recovered energy; and
    - D. Additional energy use caused solely by outside air filtration and treatment for the reduction and treatment of unusual outdoor contaminants with final pressure drops more than one-inch water column. Only the energy accounted for by the amount of the pressure drop that is over one inch may be excluded.
  4. **U-values.** U-values shall be calculated as follows:
    - A. **All building components.** The U-value of all building components shall be calculated to three decimal places; the calculations shall assume still inside air and a 15 miles per hour outside air velocity, or other assumptions approved by the commission.

- B. **Wood-framed assemblies.** U-values for wood-framed assemblies shall be calculated using the parallel path method listed in ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 22, with framing factors approved by the commission.
- C. **Metal-framed assemblies.** U-values for metal-framed assemblies shall be calculated using the zone method listed in ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 22, or a method approved by the commission.
- D. **Fenestration.** U-values for fenestration shall be determined as follows:
  - i. For field-fabricated fenestration products, U-values shall include the effects of framing and shall be determined using NFRC procedures or default values as set forth in [Section 116](#); or
  - ii. For manufactured windows, U-values shall be as certified under [Section 116](#); or
  - iii. Using a method approved by the commission.
- E. **Masonry assemblies.** U-values for masonry assemblies shall be calculated using the transverse isothermal planes method listed in ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 22, or a method approved by the commission.
- F. **Other.** U-values for components not listed in this subsection shall be calculated using a method approved by the commission.
- 5. **Solar heat gain coefficients.** Solar heat gain coefficients shall be determined using National Fenestration Rating Council's NFRC 200 (1995), as set forth in [Section 116](#), and shall not be adjusted for the effects of interior or exterior shading devices.
- 6. **Visible light transmittance.** Visible light transmittance shall be determined using the values listed in ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 27, or manufacturers literature, and shall be adjusted for the effects of framing and interior or exterior shading devices.

## SECTION 142 – PRESCRIPTIVE APPROACH

In order to comply with the prescriptive approach under this section, a building shall be designed with and shall have constructed and installed:

- (a) A building envelope that complies with [Section 143 \(a\)](#) or [143 \(b\)](#);
- (b) A space-conditioning system that complies with [Section 144](#);
- (c) A service water-heating system that complies with [Section 145](#); and
- (d) A lighting system that complies with [Section 146](#).

## SECTION 143 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ENVELOPES

A building complies with this section by being designed with and having constructed and installed either (1) envelope components that comply with each of the requirements in Subsection (a) for each individual component, or (2) an envelope that complies with the overall requirements in [Subsection \(b\)](#). When making calculations under Subsection (a) or (b), all of the rules listed in [Section 141 \(c\) 1, 4, and 5](#) shall apply.

### (a) Envelope Component Approach.

1. **Exterior roofs and ceilings.** Exterior roofs and ceilings shall have either an installed insulation R-value no less than, or an overall assembly U-value no greater than, the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
2. **Exterior walls.** Exterior walls shall have either an installed insulation R-value no less than, or an overall assembly U-value no greater than, the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
3. **Demising walls.** The opaque portions of framed demising walls in nonresidential buildings shall have insulation with an installed insulation R-value no less than R-11 between framing members.
4. **External floors and soffits.** External floors and soffits shall have either an installed insulation R-value no less than, or an overall assembly U-value no greater than, the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
5. **Windows.** Windows shall:
  - A. Have an area no greater than 40 percent of the gross exterior wall area, or six feet times the display perimeter, whichever is greater; and

**EXCEPTION to 143 (a) 5 A:** Window area in demising walls is not counted as part of the window area for this requirement. Demising wall area is not counted as part of the gross exterior wall area or display perimeter.

- B. Have a U-value no greater than the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#); and
- C. Have a relative solar heat gain, excluding the effects of interior shading, no greater than the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#). The relative solar heat gain of windows is:
  - i. The solar heat gain coefficient of the windows; or
  - ii. Relative solar heat gain as calculated by Equation (1-B), if an overhang extends beyond both sides of the window jamb a distance equal to the overhang projection.

**EXCEPTION to Section 143 (a) 5 C:** The applicable "north" value for relative solar heat gain in Table 1-H or 1-I shall be used for windows:

- A. That are in the first story of exterior walls that form a display perimeter; and
- B. For which codes restrict the use of overhangs to shade the windows.

### EQUATION (1-B)—RELATIVE SOLAR HEAT GAIN EQUATION

$$RSHG = SHGC_{win} \times \left[ 1 + \frac{aH}{V} + b \left( \frac{H}{V} \right)^2 \right]$$

**WHERE:**

- $RSHG$  = Relative solar heat gain.
- $SHGC_{win}$  = Solar heat gain coefficient of the window.
- $H$  = Horizontal projection of the overhang from the surface of the window in feet, but no greater than  $V$ .
- $V$  = Vertical distance from the window sill to the bottom of the overhang, in feet.
- $a$  = -0.41 for north-facing windows, -1.22 for south-facing windows, and -0.92 for east- and west-facing windows.
- $b$  = 0.20 for north-facing windows, 0.66 for south-facing windows, and 0.35 for east- and west-facing windows.

6. **Skylights.** Skylights shall:

- A. Have an area no greater than five percent of the gross exterior roof area; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 143 (a) 6 A:** Atria over 55 feet high shall have a skylight area no greater than 10 percent of the gross exterior roof area.

- B. Have a U-value no greater than the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#); and
- C. Have a solar heat gain coefficient no greater than the applicable value in [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).

7. **Exterior doors.** Exterior doors have no R-value, U-value, or area requirements.

**TABLE 1-H—PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA  
FOR NONRESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS  
(Except high-rise residential buildings and guest rooms of hotel/motel buildings)**

	CLIMATE ZONES				
	1, 16	2-5	6-10	11-13	14, 15
<b>Roof/Ceiling</b>					
R-value or	19	19	11	19	19
U-value	0.057	0.057	0.078	0.057	0.057
<b>Wall</b>					
R-value or	13	11	11	13	13
U-value					
Wood frame	0.084	0.092	0.092	0.084	0.084
Metal frame	0.182	0.189	0.189	0.182	0.182
Mass/ $7.0 \leq HC < 15.0$	0.340	0.430	0.430	0.430	0.430
Mass/ $15.0 \leq HC$	0.360	0.650	0.690	0.650	0.400
Other	0.084	0.092	0.092	0.084	0.084
<b>Floor/Soffit</b>					
R-value or	19	11	11	11	11
U-value					
Mass/ $7.0 \leq HC$	0.097	0.158	0.158	0.097	0.158
Other	0.050	0.076	0.076	0.076	0.076
<b>Windows</b>					
U-value	0.72	1.23	1.23	0.72	0.72
Relative solar heat gain					
North	0.77	0.82	0.82	0.77	0.77
Nonnorth	0.50	0.62	0.62	0.50	0.50
<b>Skylights</b>					
U-value	0.85	1.31	1.31	0.85	0.85
Solar heat gain coefficient					
Transparent	0.44	0.61	0.61	0.44	0.44
Translucent	0.70	0.75	0.75	0.70	0.70

**TABLE 1-I—PRESCRIPTIVE ENVELOPE CRITERIA FOR HIGH-RISE  
RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS AND GUEST ROOMS  
OF HOTEL/MOTEL BUILDINGS**

	CLIMATE ZONES				
	1, 16	2-5	6-10	11-13	14, 15
<b>Roof/Ceiling</b>					
R-value or	30	19	19	30	30
U-value	0.037	0.051	0.051	0.037	0.037
<b>Wall</b>					
R-value or	19	11	11	13	13
U-value					
Wood frame	0.063	0.092	0.092	0.084	0.084
Metal frame	0.140	0.181	0.181	0.175	0.175
Mass/7.0≤HC<15.0	0.340	0.430	0.430	0.430	0.430
Mass/15.0≤HC	0.360	0.650	0.690	0.650	0.400
Other	0.063	0.092	0.092	0.084	0.084
<b>Floor/Soffit</b>					
R-value or	19	11	11	11	11
U-value					
Mass/7.0≤HC	0.097	0.158	0.158	0.097	0.097
Other	0.050	0.076	0.076	0.076	0.076
Raised concrete R-value	8	*	*	*	*
<b>Windows</b>					
U-value	0.72	1.23	1.23	0.72	0.72
Relative solar heat gain					
North	0.77	0.82	0.82	0.77	0.77
Nonnorth	0.77	0.82	0.62	0.50	0.50
<b>Skylights</b>					
U-value	0.85	1.31	1.31	0.85	0.85
Solar heat gain coefficient					
Transparent	0.44	0.61	0.61	0.44	0.44
Translucent	0.70	0.75	0.75	0.70	0.70

\* Required insulation levels for concrete raised floors are R-8 in Climate Zones 2, 11, 13, and 14;  
R-4 in Climate Zones 12 and 15, and R-0 in Climate Zones 3 through 10.

(b) **Overall Envelope Approach.**

1. **Overall heat loss.** The overall heat loss (HL) of the overall envelope of the proposed building,  $HL_{prop}$  as calculated with Equation (1-D), shall be no greater than the overall heat loss of a standard building,  $HL_{std}$  as calculated with Equation (1-C). In making the calculations, it shall be assumed that the orientation and area of each envelope component is the same as in the proposed building.

## EQUATION (1-C)—STANDARD BUILDING HEAT LOSS EQUATION

$$HL_{std} = \sum_{i=1}^{nW} (A_{Wi} \times U_{Wi_{std}}) + \sum_{i=1}^{nF} (A_{Fi} \times U_{Fi_{std}}) + \sum_{i=1}^{nR} (A_{Ri} \times U_{Ri_{std}}) + \sum_{i=1}^{nG} (A_{Gi} \times U_{Gi_{std}}) + \sum_{i=1}^{nS} (A_{Si} \times U_{Si_{std}})$$

**WHERE:**

$HL_{std}$  = Overall heat loss of the standard building (in Btu/h-°F).

$i$  = Each wall type and orientation, floor/soffit type, roof/ceiling type, window type and orientation, or skylight type for the standard building.

$nW, nR,$

$nG, nF$

$nS$  = Number of components of the applicable envelope feature.

$A_{Wi}$  = Exterior wall area on the north, east, south, and west orientations of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>) plus the window area on that orientation of the proposed building, minus  $A_{Gi}$ . The standard building has as many walls in each orientation as there are HC categories in that orientation of the proposed building.

$A_{Fi}$  = Exterior floor/soffit area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>). The standard building has as many floors/soffits as there are HC categories in the floors/soffits of the proposed building.

$A_{Ri}$  = Exterior roof/ceiling area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>) plus the skylight area of the proposed building, less  $A_{Si}$ .

$A_{Gi}$  = Window area of each type on the north, east, south, and west orientations of the standard building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>). If the total window wall ratio of the proposed building is more than 40 percent, the total window area is the greater of (a) 40 percent of the gross exterior wall area, or (b) six feet times the display perimeter. The window area of each type and on each orientation of the standard design shall be decreased in proportion to the area in the proposed design according to one of the following formulas as applicable:

$$(a) \quad A_{Gi-adj} = \left( \frac{A_{Gi-prop}}{A_{Gtotal-prop}} \right) \times 0.40 \times A_{Wtotal-prop}$$

$$(b) \quad A_{Gi-adj} = \left( \frac{A_{Gi-prop}}{A_{Gtotal-prop}} \right) \times (6 \times Display Perimeter)$$

If the total window area of the proposed building is less than 10 percent of the gross exterior wall area, the window area of each type and on each orientation of the standard design shall be increased in proportion to the area in the proposed design according to the following formula:



**143 (b) 1 EQUATION 1-C**

$$A_{Gi-adj} = \left( \frac{A_{Gi-prop}}{A_{Gtotal-prop}} \right) \times 0.10 \times A_{Wtotal-prop}$$

**WHERE:**

$A_{Gi-adj}$  = Adjusted window area of each type on the north, east, south, and west orientations (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Gi-prop}$  = Actual proposed window area of each type in the respective orientation (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Gtotal-prop}$  = Total actual proposed window area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Wtotal-prop}$  = Total actual proposed gross exterior wall area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Si}$  = Skylight area of the standard building for each skylight type (in ft.<sup>2</sup>). The total skylight area in the standard building is equal to the total skylight area of the proposed building or five percent of the gross exterior roof area (or, for atria over 55 feet high, 10 percent of the gross exterior roof area), whichever is less. If the total skylight area of the proposed building is more than five percent of the gross exterior roof area or more than 10 percent of the gross exterior roof area for atria over 55 feet high, the skylight area of each type of the standard building shall be decreased in proportion to the area in the proposed design according to the following formula:

$$A_{Si-adj} = \left( \frac{A_{Si-prop}}{A_{Stotal-prop}} \right) \times 0.10 \times A_{Rtotal-prop}$$

for atria over 55 feet high, and

$$A_{Si-adj} = \left( \frac{A_{Si-prop}}{A_{Stotal-prop}} \right) \times 0.05 \times A_{Rtotal-prop}$$

for others, where:

$A_{Si-adj}$  = Adjusted skylight area of each type (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Si-prop}$  = Actual proposed skylight area of each type (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Stotal-prop}$  = Total actual proposed skylight area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

$A_{Rtotal-prop}$  = Total actual proposed gross exterior roof area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).

- $U_{Wstd}$  = The applicable wall U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Wj}$  from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
- $U_{Fstd}$  = The applicable floor/soffit U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Fj}$  from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
- $U_{Rstd}$  = The applicable roof/ceiling U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Rj}$  from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
- $U_{Gstd}$  = The applicable window U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Gj}$  from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).
- $U_{Sstd}$  = The applicable skylight U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Sj}$  from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#).

**EQUATION (1-D)—PROPOSED BUILDING HEAT LOSS EQUATION**

$$HL_{prop} = \sum_{j=1}^{nW} (A_{Wj} \times U_{Wj_{prop}}) + \sum_{j=1}^{nF} (A_{Fj} \times U_{Fj_{prop}}) + \sum_{j=1}^{nR} (A_{Rj} \times U_{Rj_{prop}}) + \sum_{j=1}^{nG} (A_{Gj} \times U_{Gj_{prop}}) + \sum_{j=1}^{nS} (A_{Sj} \times U_{Sj_{prop}})$$

**WHERE:**

- $HL_{prop}$  = Overall heat loss of the proposed building (in Btu/h-°F).
- $j$  = Each wall type and orientation, floor/soffit type, roof/ceiling type, window type and orientation, or skylight type for the proposed building.
- $nW, nR,$   
 $nG, nF,$   
 $nS$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).
- $A_{Wj}$  = Exterior wall area on the north, east, south, and west orientations of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>). Each orientation has as many walls as there are HC categories.
- $A_{Fj}$  = Exterior floor/soffit area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>). There are as many floors/soffits as there are HC categories.
- $A_{Rj}$  = Exterior roof/ceiling area of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).
- $A_{Gj}$  = Window area for each window type and orientation of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).
- $A_{Sj}$  = Skylight area for each skylight type of the proposed building (in ft.<sup>2</sup>).
- $U_{Wj_{prop}}$  = The wall U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Wj}$ .
- $U_{Fj_{prop}}$  = The floor/soffit U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Fj}$ .
- $U_{Rj_{prop}}$  = The roof/ceiling U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Rj}$ .
- $U_{Gj_{prop}}$  = The window U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Gj}$ .
- $U_{Sj_{prop}}$  = The skylight U-value for the corresponding  $A_{Sj}$ .

**143 (b) 2 – EQUATION 1-E**

2. **Overall heat gain.** The overall heat gain of the overall envelope of the proposed building,  $HG_{prop}$  as calculated with Equation (1-F), shall be no greater than the overall heat gain of the overall envelope of a standard building,  $HG_{std}$  as calculated with Equation (1-E). In making the calculations, it shall be assumed that the orientation and area of each envelope component of the standard building are the same as in the proposed building.

**EQUATION (1-E)—STANDARD BUILDING HEAT GAIN EQUATION**

$$\begin{aligned}
 HG_{std} = & \sum_{i=1}^{nW} (A_{Wi} \times U_{Wi_{std}} \times TF_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{nF} (A_{Fi} \times U_{Fi_{std}} \times TF_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{nR} (A_{Ri} \times U_{Ri_{std}} \times TF_i) \\
 & + \sum_{i=1}^{nG} (A_{Gi} \times U_{Gi_{std}} \times TF_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{nS} (A_{Si} \times U_{Si_{std}} \times TF_i) + \sum_{i=1}^{nG} (WF_{Gi} \times A_{Gi} \times RSHG_{Gi_{std}}) \times SF \\
 & + \sum_{i=1}^{nS} (WF_{Si} \times A_{Si} \times SHGC_{Si_{std}}) \times SF
 \end{aligned}$$

**WHERE:**

$HG_{std}$  = Overall heat gain of the standard building (Btu/h).

$i$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$nW, nR,$   
 $nG, nF,$   
 $nS$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$A_{Wi}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$A_{Fi}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$A_{Ri}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$A_{Gi}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$A_{Si}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$U_{Wi_{std}}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$U_{Fi_{std}}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$U_{Ri_{std}}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$U_{Gi_{std}}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$U_{Si_{std}}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-C](#).

$RSHG_{Gistd}$  = The applicable relative solar heat gain for the corresponding  $A_{Gi}$ , from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#) (unitless).

$W_n, W_e, W_s, WF_{Gi}$  = The applicable weighting factor for each orientation of the standard building, from [Table 1-K](#) (unitless).

$WF_{Si}$  = The applicable weighting factor for skylight of the standard building, from [Table 1-K](#) (unitless).

$SHGC_{Sistd}$  = The applicable solar heat gain coefficient for the corresponding  $A_{Si}$ , from [Table 1-H](#) or [1-I](#) (unitless).

$SF$  = The solar factor from [Table 1-J](#).

$TF_i$  = The temperature factor from [Table 1-J](#).

**EQUATION (1-F)—PROPOSED BUILDING HEAT GAIN EQUATION**

$$\begin{aligned}
 HG_{prop} = & \sum_{j=1}^{nW} \left( A_{Wj} \times U_{Wj_{prop}} \times TF_j \right) + \sum_{j=1}^{nF} \left( A_{Fj} \times U_{Fj_{prop}} \times TF_j \right) + \sum_{j=1}^{nR} \left( A_{Rj} \times U_{Rj_{prop}} \times TF_j \right) \\
 & + \sum_{j=1}^{nG} \left( A_{Gj} \times U_{Gj_{prop}} \times TF_j \right) + \sum_{j=1}^{nS} \left( A_{Sj} \times U_{Sj_{prop}} \times TF_j \right) + \sum_{j=1}^{nG} \left( WF_{Gj} \times A_{Gj} \times SHGC_{Gj_{prop}} \times OHF_j \right) \times SF \\
 & + \sum_{j=1}^{nS} \left( WF_{Sj} \times A_{Sj} \times SHGC_{Sj_{prop}} \right) \times SF
 \end{aligned}$$

**WHERE:**

$HG_{prop}$  = Overall heat gain of the proposed building (Btu/h).

$j$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$nW, nR, nG, nF, nS$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$A_{Wj}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$A_{Fj}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$A_{Rj}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$A_{Gj}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$A_{Sj}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

**143 (b) 2 EQUATION 1-F**

$U_{Wjprop}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$U_{Fjprop}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$U_{Rjprop}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$U_{Gjprop}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$U_{Sjprop}$  = As determined in [Equation 1-D](#).

$SHGC_{Gj}$  = The solar heat gain coefficient for the corresponding  $A_{Gj}$  (unitless)

$SHGC_{Sj}$  = The solar heat gain coefficient for the corresponding  $A_{Sj}$  (unitless).

$OHF_{Gj}$  = The overhang factor for the corresponding  $A_{Gj}$  (unitless).

$$OHF_{Gj} = 1 + aH/V + b(H/V)^2$$

**WHERE:**

$H$  = Horizontal projection of an overhang from the surface of the window, no greater than  $V$ , in feet.

$V$  = Vertical distance from the window sill to the bottom of the overhang, in feet.

$a$  = -0.41 for north-facing windows, -1.22 for south-facing windows, and -0.92 for east- and west-facing windows.

$b$  = 0.20 for north-facing windows, 0.66 for south-facing windows, and 0.35 for east- and west-facing windows.

$WF_{Gj}$  = The applicable weighting factor for each orientation of the building, from [Table 1-K](#) (unitless).

$WF_{Sj}$  = The applicable weighting factor for skylight of the proposed building, from [Table 1-K](#) (unitless).

$SF$  = The solar factor from [Table 1-J](#).

$TF_j$  = The temperature factor from [Table 1-J](#).

**TABLE 1-J—TEMPERATURE AND SOLAR FACTORS**

CLIMATE ZONE	TEMPERATURE FACTOR (TF)			SOLAR FACTOR (SF) (Btu/hr. x ft. <sup>2</sup> )
	Envelope Construction			
	Light Mass	Medium Mass	Heavy Mass	
1	14	3	1	128
2	40	30	28	126
3	28	18	16	126
4	32	22	20	125
5	27	17	15	124
6	28	18	16	123
7	27	17	15	123
8	33	23	21	123
9	42	31	29	123
10	45	35	33	123
11	49	38	36	127
12	45	34	32	126
13	45	35	33	125
14	52	42	40	125
15	55	45	43	123
16	34	23	21	128

Light Mass: Heat Capacity < 7 Btu/ft.<sup>2</sup>-°F

Medium Mass: Heat Capacity >= 7 and <15 Btu/ft.<sup>2</sup>-°F

Heavy Mass: Heat Capacity >= 15 Btu/ft.<sup>2</sup>-°F

**TABLE 1-K—GLAZING ORIENTATION WEIGHTING FACTORS (WF<sub>G</sub>) & (WF<sub>S</sub>)**

	CLIMATE ZONES				
	1, 16	2-5	6-10	11-13	14, 15
North	0.63	0.52	0.34	0.42	0.67
East	1.14	1.05	1.02	1.27	1.08
South	0.99	1.24	1.31	1.14	1.12
West	1.24	1.19	1.34	1.17	1.13
Skylight	2.54	2.74	2.30	2.54	2.45

## 144 (a) – (b) 5

### SECTION 144 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SPACE-CONDITIONING SYSTEMS

A building complies with this section by being designed with and having constructed and installed a space-conditioning system that meets the requirements of Subsections (a) through (g).

- (a) **Sizing and Equipment Selection.** Mechanical heating and mechanical cooling equipment shall be the smallest size, within the available options of the desired equipment line, necessary to meet the design heating and cooling loads of the building, as calculated according to Subsection (b).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 144 (a):** Where it can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that oversizing will not increase building source energy use.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 144 (a):** Standby equipment with controls that allow the standby equipment to operate only when the primary equipment is not operating.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 144 (a):** Multiple units of the same equipment type, such as multiple chillers and boilers, having combined capacities exceeding the design load, if they have controls that sequence or otherwise optimally control the operation of each unit based on load.

- (b) **Calculations.** In making equipment sizing calculations under Subsection (a), all of the following rules shall apply:

1. **Methodology.** The methodologies, computer programs, inputs, and assumptions approved by the commission shall be used.
2. **Heating and cooling loads.** Heating and cooling system design loads shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, or as specified in a method approved by the commission.
3. **Indoor design conditions.** Indoor design temperature and humidity conditions for general comfort applications shall be determined in accordance with ANSI/ASHRAE 55-1992 or Chapter 8 of the ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, except that winter humidification and summer dehumidification shall not be required.
4. **Outdoor design conditions.** Outdoor design conditions shall be selected from ASHRAE publication SPCDX: Climatic Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii, and Nevada, 1982. Heating design temperatures shall be no lower than the temperature listed in the Winter Median of Extremes column. Cooling design dry bulb temperatures shall be no greater than the temperature listed in the Summer Design Dry Bulb 0.5 percent column. Cooling design wet bulb temperatures shall be no greater than the temperature listed in the Summer Design Wet Bulb 0.5 percent column.
5. **Ventilation.** Outdoor air ventilation loads shall be calculated using the ventilation rates required in [Section 121](#).

6. **Envelope.** Envelope heating and cooling loads shall be calculated using envelope characteristics, including square footage, thermal conductance, solar heat gain coefficient or shading coefficient, and air leakage, consistent with the proposed design.
  7. **Lighting.** Lighting loads shall be based on actual design lighting levels or power densities consistent with [Section 146](#).
  8. **People.** Occupant density shall be based on the expected occupancy of the building and shall be the same as determined under [Section 121 \(b\) 2 B](#), if used. Sensible and latent heat gains shall be as listed in ASHRAE Handbook, 1993, Fundamentals Volume, Chapter 26, Table 3.
  9. **Process loads.** Loads caused by a process shall be based upon actual information on the intended use of the building.
  10. **Miscellaneous equipment.** Equipment loads shall be calculated using design data compiled from one or more of the following sources:
    - A. Actual information based on the intended use of the building; or
    - B. Published data from manufacturer's technical publications and from technical societies, such as the ASHRAE Handbook, 1995; HVAC Applications Volume; or
    - C. Other data based on the designer's experience of expected loads and occupancy patterns.
  11. **Internal heat gains.** Internal heat gains may be ignored for heating load calculations.
  12. **Safety factor.** Design loads may be increased by up to 10 percent to account for unexpected loads or changes in space usage.
  13. **Other loads.** Loads such as warm-up or cool-down shall be calculated from principles based on the heat capacity of the building and its contents, the degree of setback, and desired recovery time; or may be assumed to be no more than 30 percent for heating and 10 percent for cooling of the steady-state design loads. The steady-state load may include a safety factor in accordance with [Section 144 \(b\) 12](#).
- (c) **Power Consumption of Fans.** Each fan system used for comfort space conditioning with a total fan power index over 25 horsepower shall meet the requirements of Item 1 or 2 below, as applicable. Total fan system power demand equals the sum of the power demand of all fans in the system that are required to operate at design conditions in order to supply air from the heating or cooling source to the conditioned space, and to return it back to the source or to exhaust it to the outdoors; however, total fan system power demand need not include the additional power demand caused solely by air treatment or filtering systems with final pressure drops more than one-inch water column (only the energy accounted for by the amount of pressure drop that is over one inch may be excluded), or fan system power caused solely by process loads.



**144 (c) 1 – (d) 3**

1. **Constant volume fan systems.** The total fan power index of each fan system at design conditions shall not exceed 0.8 watts per cfm of supply air.
2. **Variable air volume (VAV) systems.**
  - A. The total fan power index of each fan system at design conditions shall not exceed 1.25 watts per cfm of supply air; and
  - B. Individual VAV fans with motors over 25 horsepower shall meet one of the following:
    - i. The fan motor shall be driven by a mechanical or electrical variable speed drive.
    - ii. The fan shall be a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades.
    - iii. For prescriptive compliance, the fan motor shall include controls that limit the fan motor demand to no more than 30 percent of the total design wattage at 50 percent of design air volume when static pressure set point equals 1/3 of the total design static pressure, based on certified manufacturer's test data.
3. **Air-treatment or filtering systems.** For systems with air-treatment or filtering systems, calculate the adjusted fan power index using the following equation:

$$\text{Adjusted fan power index} = \text{Fan power index} \times \text{Fan Adjustment}$$

$$\text{Fan Adjustment} = 1 - \left( \frac{SP_a}{SP_f} \right)$$

**WHERE:**

$SP_a$  = Air pressure drop across the air-treatment or filtering system.

$SP_f$  = Total pressure drop across the fan.

- (d) **Space-conditioning Zone Controls.** Each space-conditioning zone shall have controls that prevent:
  1. Reheating; and
  2. Recooling; and
  3. Simultaneous provisions of heating and cooling to the same zone, such as mixing or simultaneous supply of air that has been previously mechanically heated and air that has been previously cooled, either by cooling equipment or by economizer systems.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 144 (d):** Zones served by a variable air-volume system that is designed and controlled to reduce, to a minimum, the volume of reheated, re-cooled, or mixed air supply. For each zone, this minimum volume shall be no greater than the largest of the following:

- A. 30 percent of the peak supply volume; or
- B. The minimum required to meet the ventilation requirements of [Section 121](#); or
- C. 0.4 cubic feet per minute (cfm) per square foot of conditioned floor area of the zone; or
- D. 300 cfm.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 144 (d):** Zones with special pressurization relationships or cross-contamination control needs.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 144 (d):** Zones served by space-conditioning systems in which at least 75 percent of the energy for reheating, or providing warm air in mixing systems, is provided from a site-recovered or site-solar energy source.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 144 (d):** Zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy process needs.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 144 (d):** Zones with a peak supply-air quantity of 300 cfm or less.

(e) **Economizers.**

1. Each individual cooling fan system that has a design supply capacity over 2,500 cfm and a total mechanical cooling capacity over 75,000 Btu/hr. shall include either:
  - A. An air economizer capable of modulating outside-air and return-air dampers to supply 100 percent of the design supply air quantity as outside-air; or
  - B. A water economizer capable of providing 100 percent of the expected system cooling load as calculated in accordance with a method approved by the commission, at outside air temperatures of 50°F dry-bulb/45°F wet-bulb and below.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 144 (e) 1:** Where it can be shown to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that special outside air filtration and treatment, for the reduction and treatment of unusual outdoor contaminants, makes compliance infeasible.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 144 (e) 1:** Where the use of outdoor air for cooling will affect other systems, such as humidification, dehumidification, or supermarket refrigeration systems, so as to increase overall building source energy use.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 144 (e) 1:** Systems serving high-rise residential living quarters and hotel/motel guest rooms.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 144 (e) 1:** Where it can be shown to the satisfaction of the enforcing agency that the use of outdoor air is detrimental to equipment or materials in a space or room served by a dedicated space-conditioning system, such as a computer room or telecommunications equipment room.

2. If an economizer is required by Subparagraph 1, it shall be:
  - A. Designed and equipped with controls so that economizer operation does not increase the building heating energy use during normal operation; and

**144 (e) 2 – (g)**

- B. Capable of providing partial cooling even when additional mechanical cooling is required to meet the remainder of the cooling load.

**EXCEPTION to Section 144 (e) 2 A:** Systems that provide 75 percent of the annual energy used for mechanical heating from site-recovered energy or a site-solar energy source.

- (f) **Supply Air Temperature Reset Controls.** Mechanical space-conditioning systems supplying heated or cooled air to multiple zones shall include controls that automatically reset supply-air temperatures:

1. In response to representative building loads or to outdoor air temperature; and
2. By at least 25 percent of the difference between the design supply-air temperature and the design room air temperature.

Air distribution to zones that are likely to have constant loads, such as interior zones, shall be designed for the fully reset supply temperature.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 144 (f):** Systems that meet the requirements of [Section 144 \(d\)](#), without using Exception 1 or 2 to that section.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 144 (f):** Where supply-air temperature reset would increase overall building energy use.

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 144 (f):** Zones in which specific humidity levels are required to satisfy process needs.

- (g) **Electric Resistance Heating.** Electric resistance heating systems shall not be used for space heating.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 144 (g):** Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heating system in which at least 60 percent of the annual energy requirement is supplied by site-solar or recovered energy.

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 144 (g):** Where an electric-resistance heating system supplements a heat pump heating system, and the heating capacity of the heat pump is more than 75 percent of the design heating load calculated in accordance with [Section 144 \(a\)](#) at the design outdoor temperature specified in [Section 144 \(b\) 4](#).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 144 (g):** Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the entire building is less than 10 percent of the total design output capacity of all heating equipment serving the entire building.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 144 (g):** Where the total capacity of all electric-resistance heating systems serving the building, excluding those allowed under Exception 2, is no more than 3 kW.

**EXCEPTION 5 to Section 144 (g):** Where an electric resistance heating system serves an entire building that:

- A. Is not a high-rise residential or hotel/motel building; and
- B. Has a conditioned floor area no greater than 5,000 square feet; and
- C. Has no mechanical cooling; and
- D. Is in an area where natural gas is not currently available and an extension of a natural gas system is impractical, as determined by the natural gas utility.

## SECTION 145 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR SERVICE WATER-HEATING SYSTEMS

- (a) **Nonresidential and Hotel/Motel Occupancies.** A service water-heating system installed in a nonresidential or hotel/motel building complies with this section if it complies with the applicable requirements of [Sections 111, 113, and 123](#).
- (b) **High-rise Residential Occupancies.** A service-water heating system installed in a high-rise residential building complies with this section if it complies with [Section 151 \(f\) 8](#).

## SECTION 146 – PRESCRIPTIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING

A building complies with this section if its actual lighting power density calculated under Subsection (a) is no greater than the allowed lighting power density calculated under Subsection (b).

- (a) **Calculation of Actual Lighting Power Density.** The actual lighting power density of the proposed building is the total watts of all planned permanent lighting systems (including, but not limited to, track and flexible lighting systems, lighting that is integral with modular furniture, movable displays and cabinets, and internally illuminated case work for task or display purposes), minus any adjustments allowed under Subsections 1 through 4.
  - 1. **Multiple interlocked lighting systems serving a space.** When multiple interlocked lighting systems serve a space, the watts of all systems except the system with the highest wattage may be excluded if:
    - A. The lighting systems are interlocked to prevent simultaneous operation; or
    - B. The lighting systems are controlled by a preset dimming system or other device that prevents simultaneous operation of more than one lighting system, except under the direct control of authorized personnel.
  - 2. **Reduction of wattage through controls.** The watts of any luminaire that is controlled may be reduced by the number of watts times the applicable factor from [Table 1-L](#) if:
    - A. The control complies with [Section 119](#); and
    - B. At least 50 percent of the light output of the luminaire is within the applicable space listed in [Table 1-L](#); and
    - C. Except as noted in [Table 1-L](#), only one power adjustment factor is used for the luminaire; and
    - D. For daylighting control credits, the luminaire is controlled by the daylighting control, and the luminaire is located within the daylit area.

TABLE 1-L—LIGHTING POWER ADJUSTMENT FACTORS

TYPE OF CONTROL	TYPE OF SPACE		FACTOR
<b>Occupant sensor</b> With separate sensor for each space	Any space ≤ 250 square feet enclosed by opaque floor-to-ceiling partitions; any size classroom, corridor, conference or waiting room		0.20
	Rooms of any size that are used exclusively for storage		0.60
	Greater than 250 square feet		0.10
<b>Dimming system</b> Manual	Hotels/motels, restaurants, auditoriums, theaters		0.10
	Multiscene programmable		0.20
<b>Lumen maintenance controls</b>	Any space		0.05
<b>Tuning</b>	Any space		0.10
<b>Automatic time switch control device</b>	< 250 square feet and with a timed manual override at each switch location required by Section 131 (a), and controlling only the lights in the area enclosed by ceiling-height partitions.		0.05
<b>Combined controls</b> Occupant sensor with a separate sensor for each space used in conjunction with lumen maintenance controls  Occupant sensor with programmable multiscene dimming system  Occupant sensor with a separate sensor for each space used in conjunction with daylighting controls and separate sensor for each space	Any space ≤ 250 square feet and enclosed by opaque floor-to-ceiling partitions		0.25
	Hotels/motels, restaurants, auditoriums, theaters		0.35
	Any space ≤ 250 square feet within a daylit area and enclosed by opaque floor-to-ceiling partitions		0.10 (may be added to daylighting control credit)
<b>Automatic Daylighting Controls (Stepped/Dimming)</b>			
	<b>WINDOWS</b> <b>Window Wall Ratio</b>		
<b>Glazing Type</b>	< 20%	20% to 40%	> 40%
VLT ≥ 60%	0.20/0.30	0.30/0.40	0.40/0.40
VLT ≥ 35 and < 60%	0/0	0.20/0.30	0.30/0.40
VLT < 35%	0/0	0/0	0.20/0.40
	<b>SKYLIGHTS</b> <b>Percentage of Gross Exterior Roof Area</b>		
<b>Glazing Type</b>	< 1%	1% to 3%	> 3%
VLT ≥ 60%	0/0.30	0.15/0.40	0.30/0.40
VLT ≥ 35 and < 60%	0/0.20	0/0.30	0.15/0.40
VLT < 35%	0/0.10	0/0.20	0/0.30

3. **Lighting wattage excluded.** The watts of the following lighting applications may be excluded from the actual lighting power density of the building:
- A. Lighting for theme parks and special effects lighting for dance floors;
  - B. Lighting for film, video or photography studios;
  - C. Lighting for exhibits or for theatrical and other live performances, in exhibit, convention areas, and in hotel function areas, if the lighting is an addition to a general lighting system, and if the lighting is controlled by a multiscene or theatrical cross-fade control station accessible only to authorized operators;
  - D. Specialized local lighting installed in nonlighting equipment by its manufacturer;
  - E. In medical and clinical buildings, examination and surgical lights, low-level night lights, and lighting integral to medical equipment;
  - F. In restaurant buildings and areas, lighting for food warming or integral to food preparation equipment;
  - G. Interior lighting in refrigerated cases;
  - H. Lighting for plant growth or maintenance, if it is equipped with an automatic 24-hour time switch that has program backup capabilities that prevent the loss of the switch's program and time setting for at least 10 hours if power is interrupted;
  - I. Lighting equipment that is for sale;
  - J. Lighting demonstration equipment in lighting education facilities;
  - K. Lighting that is required for exit signs subject to Section 1013 of the UBC if it has an efficacy of at least 40 lumens per watt and has a power factor greater than 90 percent;
  - L. Exitway or egress illumination that is normally off and that is subject to Section 1012 of the UBC;
  - M. Exitway or egress lighting whose switching is regulated by Article 3-700 of the California Electrical Code (Title 24, Part 3);
  - N. In hotel/motel buildings, lighting in guest rooms;
  - O. In high-rise residential buildings, lighting in living quarters.

**146 (a) 3 – (b) 2**

- P. The lighting system using the least wattage in a redundant lighting system interlocked or otherwise controlled to prohibit simultaneous operation of more than one lighting system.
  - 4. **Lighting fixtures.** The watts of track and other lighting fixtures that allow the substitution of low efficacy sources for high efficacy sources without altering the wiring of the fixture shall be determined by a method approved by the commission.
- (b) **Calculation of Allowed Lighting Power Density.** The allowed lighting power density for each application for a building permit shall be calculated using one and only one of the methods in Subsection 1, 2, or 3, as applicable.
- 1. **Complete building method.** The Complete Building Method may be used only on projects involving entire buildings with one occupancy type or mixed occupancy buildings where one occupancy makes up 90 percent of the conditioned floor area of the entire building. This approach may only be used when the applicant is applying for a lighting permit for, and submits plans and specifications for, the entire building. Under this approach, the allowed lighting power density is the lighting power density value in Table 1-M times the conditioned floor area of the entire building. Hotel/motel and high-rise residential buildings shall not use this method.

**TABLE 1-M—COMPLETE BUILDING METHOD LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES (Watts/ft.<sup>2</sup>)**

TYPE OF USE	ALLOWED LIGHTING POWER
General commercial and industrial work buildings	
High bay	1.2
Low bay	1.0
Grocery stores	1.5
Industrial and commercial storage buildings	0.7
Medical buildings and clinics	1.2
Office buildings	1.2
Religious facilities, auditorium and convention centers	1.8
Restaurants	1.2
Retail and wholesale stores	1.7
Schools	1.4
Theaters	1.3
All others	0.6

- 2. **Area category method.** Under the Area Category Method, the total allowed lighting power for the building is the sum of all allowed lighting powers for all areas in the building. For purposes of the area Category Method, an "area" shall be defined as all contiguous spaces which accommodate or are associated with a single one of the primary functions listed in [Table 1-N](#). Where areas are bounded or separated by

interior partitions, the floor space occupied by those interior partitions shall be included in any area. When the Area Category Method is used to calculate the allowed total lighting power for an entire building, main entry lobbies, corridors, restrooms, and support functions shall be treated as separate areas.

**EXCEPTION to Section 146 (b) 2:** The tailored method [\[Section 146 \(b\) 3\]](#) may be used for up to 10 percent of the floor area of a building that is otherwise using the Area Category Method. The two lighting methods cannot be used for the same floor area. The floor area for calculations based on the Tailored Method must be subtracted from the floor area for the remainder of the building lighting calculations. Trade-offs of lighting between the two methods is not allowed.



**TABLE 1-N—AREA CATEGORY METHOD - LIGHTING POWER  
DENSITY VALUES (Watts/ft.<sup>2</sup>)**

PRIMARY FUNCTION	ALLOWED LIGHTING POWER
Auditorium	2.0*
Auto repair	1.2
Bank/financial institution	1.4
Classrooms, lecture, training, vocational room	1.6
Commercial and industrial storage	0.6
Convention, conference, multipurpose and meeting centers	1.6*
Corridors, restrooms, stairs and support areas	0.6
Dining	1.1*
Electrical, mechanical rooms	0.7
Exercise center, gymnasium	1.0
Exhibit, museum	2.0
General commercial and industrial work	
High bay	1.2
Low bay	1.0
Grocery store	1.6
Hotel function area	2.2*
Kitchen, food preparation	1.7
Laundry	0.9
Library	
Reading areas	1.2
Stacks	1.5
Lobbies:	
Hotel lobby	2.2*
Main entry lobby	1.5*
Reception/waiting	1.1*
Locker/dressing room	0.9
Lounge/recreation	1.1
Malls, arcades and atria	1.2*
Medical and clinical care	1.4
Office	1.3
Precision commercial or industrial work	1.5
Religious worship	2.1*
Retail sales, wholesale showrooms	2.0
Theaters	
Motion picture	0.9
Performance	1.4*
All other	0.6

\* The smallest of the following values may be added to the allowed lighting power listed in Table 1-N for ornamental chandeliers and sconces that are switched or dimmed on circuits different from the circuits for general lighting:

- a. 20 watts per cubic foot times the volume of the chandelier or sconce; or
- b. One watt per square foot times the area of the task space that the chandelier or sconce is in; or
- c. The actual design wattage of the chandelier or sconce.

3. **Tailored method.** Under the Tailored Method, the allowed lighting power density shall be calculated as specified in Subsections (b) 3 A through I. Figure 1-B provides a flow chart of the calculations.

**FIGURE 1-B—DETERMINING ALLOCATIONS WITHIN THE TAILORED METHOD IN SECTION 146(b)3**

STEP	ILLUMINANCE CATEGORY	
	A-D	E-I
	See the following Subsections	
Determine illuminance categories for each space	(b) 3 A	(b) 3 A
Determine LPD value for each space	(b) 3 B	(b) 3 C
Determine area of each space	(b) 3 D	(b) 3 D
Determine total watts for each space	(b) 3 E	(b) 3 F
Determine allowed watts for each space	(b) 3 G	(b) 3 G
Determine additional allotments allowed	(b) 3 H	(b) 3 H
Determine allowed power density of the building	(b) 3 I	(b) 3 I

- A. Determine the illuminance category of each task space according to Table 1-P or, if the task is not listed in the table, according to the IES Handbook, Applications Volume (1987 edition), incorporated herein by reference. Selection of each illuminance category shall be justified on the plans submitted under [Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1](#). Categories E through I may be used only if the plans submitted under [Section 10-103 of Title 24, Part 1](#) clearly identify all task spaces for such categories and the lighting designed to illuminate them.

**TABLE 1-P—ILLUMINANCE CATEGORIES FOR TASKS**

TASK AREA	ILLUMINANCE CATEGORY
Church	
Altar, ark, reredos	E
Choir and chancel	D
Main worship area	D
Pulpit, rostrum	E
Dining	D
Office	D*
Public area displays	G
Sales feature displays	G

\* Office Lighting American National Standard Practice ANSI/IES RP-1, 1993, shall be used to determine the illuminance category for each office task area that requires an illuminance level higher than category D. The illuminance category for visual task requirements selected for each office task area shall not be based on:

- a. Poor quality tasks that can be improved; or
- b. Tasks that are performed for less than two hours per day.

**146 (b) 3**

- B. Determine the lighting power density value of each task space for Categories A through D according to [Table 1-S](#).
- C. Determine the lighting power density value of each task space for Categories E through I according to [Table 1-S](#).
- D. Determine the area, in square feet and as measured from the middle of interior partitions, of each task space that has a separate illuminance requirement. The illuminance category of the following spaces shall be limited as stated:
- i. **Gross sales floor area.** The gross sales floor area shall be no more than 2.0 watts per square foot, plus the allocation for sales feature floor displays.
  - ii. **Sales feature floor displays.** Illuminance Category G may be used for no more than 10 percent of the gross sales floor area of the building.  
  
**EXCEPTION to Section 146 (b) 3 D ii:** For sales feature floor display lighting in stores with less than 800 square feet of gross sales area, 1000 watts may be used.
  - iii. **Gross sales wall area.** Gross sales wall areas shall be no more than 2.0 watts per square foot, plus the allocation for sales feature wall displays.
  - iv. **Sales feature wall displays.** Illuminance Category G may be used for no more than 10 percent of the gross sales wall area.
  - v. **Private offices and work areas.** Illuminance Category E may be used for up to 50 percent of the actual private office or work area; the rest of the private office or work area shall be no more than 0.4 watts per square foot.
  - vi. **Public area displays.** Illuminance Category G may be used for no more than 10 percent of the public display area of the building.
- E. Multiply the lighting power density value of each task space for Illuminance Categories A through D (from Item B) times the area of each task space (from Item D). For tasks where luminaires must be at or above a 15-foot mounting height, the result may be multiplied by the applicable figure from [Table 1-R](#).
- F. Multiply the lighting power density value of each task space for Illuminance Categories E through I (from Item C) times the area of each task space (from Item D). For tasks where luminaires must be at or above a 15-foot mounting height, the result may be multiplied by the applicable figure from [Table 1-R](#).

TABLE 1-R—MOUNTING HEIGHT MULTIPLIERS

REQUIRED MOUNTING HEIGHT (Feet)	MULTIPLIER
15	1.15
16	1.21
17	1.47
18	1.65
19	1.84
20 or more	2.04

- G. For each task space, choose the smaller of:
- i. The result in Item E plus the result in Item F; or
  - ii. The result in Item E plus the actual design watts of the lighting equipment used for task spaces for Illuminance Categories E through I and the gross sales wall area.
- H. The values obtained in Item G may be increased by the following:
- i. **Very valuable merchandise.** For lighting of very valuable merchandise, the smaller of:
    - a. 20 watts per square foot times the area of lighted case top; or
    - b. The actual design wattage of the lighting equipment for the merchandise.
  - ii. **Ornamental chandeliers and sconces.** For ornamental chandeliers and sconces in performance theater, religious worship, auditorium, mall, hotel function area, and lobby occupancy types, the smaller of:
    - a. 20 watts per cubic foot times the volume of the chandelier or sconce; or
    - b. One watt per square foot times the area of the task space that the chandelier or sconce is in; or
    - c. The actual design wattage of the chandelier or sconce.
- I. Add the results in Item G for all task spaces in the building plus the additional watts allowed in Item H. The result is the allowed lighting power of the building under the Tailored Method.

**TABLE 1-S—ILLUMINANCE CATEGORIES A THROUGH I  
LIGHTING POWER DENSITY VALUES (Watts/ft.<sup>2</sup>)**

ILLUMINANCE CATEGORY	ROOM CAVITY RATIO		
	0 to < 3.5	≥ 3.5 to < 7	≥ 7 +
A	0.2	0.3	0.4
B	0.4	0.5	0.7
C	0.6	0.7	1.1
D	0.99	1.24	1.49
E	2.31	2.97	3.88
	Task area ≤ 2 ft. <sup>2</sup> or throw distance > 8 ft.		Task area > 2 ft. <sup>2</sup> or throw distance ≤ 8 ft.
F	9.0		4.5
G	23.4		11.7
H	56.7		29.7
I	117.0		58.5

**SECTION 147 — Reserved.**

**SECTION 148 — Reserved.**

**SUBCHAPTER 6**  
**NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL**  
**OCCUPANCIES—ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS**

**SECTION 149 – ADDITIONS, ALTERATIONS, AND REPAIRS TO EXISTING BUILDINGS THAT WILL BE NONRESIDENTIAL, HIGH-RISE RESIDENTIAL, AND HOTEL/MOTEL OCCUPANCIES**

- (a) **Additions.** Additions shall meet either Item 1 or 2 below.
1. **Prescriptive approach.** The envelope and lighting of the addition, and any newly installed space-conditioning or water-heating system serving the addition, shall meet the applicable requirements of [Sections 110 through 139](#), and [Sections 142 through 146](#).
  2. **Performance approach.**
    - A. The envelope and lighting of the addition, and any newly installed space-conditioning or water-heating system serving the addition, shall meet the applicable requirements of [Sections 110 through 139](#); and
    - B. Either:
      - i. The addition alone shall comply with [Section 141](#); or
      - ii. The energy efficiency of the existing building shall be improved so that the entire building meets the energy budget in [Section 141](#) that would apply to the entire building, if the existing building was unchanged and the addition alone complied with Item 1.

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 149 (a):** When heating, cooling, or service water heating to an addition are provided by expanding existing systems, the existing systems and equipment need not comply with [Sections 110 through 129](#), or [Sections 144 through 145](#).

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 149 (a):** Where an existing system with electric reheat is expanded by adding variable air volume (VAV) boxes to serve an addition, total electric reheat capacity may be expanded not to exceed 50 percent of the existing installed electric heating capacity in any one permit and the system need not comply with [Section 144 \(g\)](#). Additional electric reheat capacity in excess of 50 percent may be added subject to the requirements of the [Section 144 \(g\)](#).

- (b) **Alterations.** Alterations to existing nonresidential, high-rise residential, or hotel/motel buildings or alterations in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a nonresidential, high-rise residential, or hotel/motel occupancy not subject to Subsection (a) shall meet either Item 1, 2, or 3 below.
1. **Prescriptive approach.** The altered envelope, space conditioning, lighting and water heating components, and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration, shall meet the applicable requirements of [Sections 110 through 132](#); and

## 149 (b) 1 – 3

- A. Alterations to the building envelope shall:
  - i. Neither increase the overall heat gain nor increase the overall heat loss of the building envelope for which a permit is sought; or
  - ii. Meet the requirements of [Section 143](#) for the altered component; and
- B. New space-conditioning systems shall meet the requirements of [Section 144](#); and
- C. New lighting systems installed in conjunction with an increase in conditioned floor area, such as adding a mezzanine, shall meet the requirements of [Section 146](#); and
- D. Alterations to existing lighting systems that increase the connected lighting load or replace more than 50 percent of the lighting fixtures shall meet the requirements of [Section 146](#); and
- E. New service water-heating systems shall meet the requirements of [Section 145](#).

**EXCEPTION to Section 149 (b) 1 A ii:** When a portion of an entire building's fenestration is repaired or replaced, or 50 square feet or less of glass is added, compliance with the solar heat gain coefficient requirements of [Section 143](#) is not required.

### 2. Performance approach.

- A. The altered envelope, spacing conditioning, lighting and water heating components, and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration, shall meet the applicable requirements of [Sections 110 through 139](#); and
- B. Either:
  - i. The permitted space alone shall comply with [Section 141](#); or
  - ii. The energy efficiency of the existing building shall be improved so that the entire building meets the energy budget in [Section 141](#) that would apply to the entire building, if the existing building was unchanged and the permitted space alone complied with Item i above.

### 3. Semiconditioned nonresidential buildings.

The altered lighting components and any newly installed lighting equipment serving the alteration within an existing semiconditioned space, shall meet the applicable requirements of [Sections 119](#), and [130 through 132](#). Alterations to existing lighting systems that increase the connected lighting load or replace more than 50 percent of the lighting fixtures shall meet the requirements of [Section 146](#).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 149 (b):** When heating, cooling or service water heating for an alteration are provided by expanding existing systems, the existing systems and equipment need not comply with [Sections 110 through 129](#) and [Section 144](#) or [145](#).

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 149 (b):** When existing heating, cooling or service water heating systems or components are moved within a building, the existing systems or components need not comply with [Sections 110 through 129](#) and [Section 144](#) or [145](#).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 149 (b):** Where an existing system with electric reheat is expanded when adding variable air volume (VAV) boxes to serve an alteration, total electric reheat capacity may be expanded not to exceed 20 percent of the existing installed electric capacity in any one permit and the system need not comply with [Section 144 \(g\)](#). Additional electric reheat capacity in excess of 20 percent may be added subject to the requirements of the [Section 144 \(g\)](#).

- (c) **Repairs.** Repairs shall not increase the preexisting energy consumption of the repaired component, system, or equipment.
- (d) **Alternate Method of Compliance.** Any addition, alteration, or repair may comply with the requirements of [Title 24, Part 6](#) by meeting the applicable requirements for the entire building.



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

**SUBCHAPTER 7**  
**LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS—MANDATORY FEATURES**  
**AND DEVICES**

**SECTION 150 – MANDATORY FEATURES AND DEVICES**

Any new construction in a low-rise residential building shall meet the requirements of this section.

(a) **Ceiling Insulation.** The opaque portions of ceilings separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:

1. Ceilings shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation resulting in an installed thermal resistance of R-19 or greater for the insulation alone.

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 150 (a) 1:** Insulation which is not penetrated by framing members may meet an R-value equivalent to installing R-19 insulation between wood-framing members and accounting for the thermal effects of framing members.

2. The weighted average U-value of ceilings shall not exceed the U-value that would result from installing R-19 insulation between wood-framing members in the entire ceiling and accounting for the effects of framing members.

(b) **Loose-fill Insulation.** When loose-fill insulation is installed, the minimum installed weight per square foot shall conform with the insulation manufacturer's installed design weight per square foot at the manufacturer's labeled R-value.

(c) **Wall Insulation.** The opaque portions of frame walls separating conditioned spaces from unconditioned spaces or ambient air shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:

1. Wood-framed walls shall be insulated between framing members with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-13 or greater. Framed foundation walls of heated basements or heated crawl spaces shall be insulated above the adjacent outside ground line with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of at least R-13.

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 150 (c) 1:** Insulation which is not penetrated by framing members may meet an R-value equivalent to installing R-13 insulation between wood-framing members and accounting for the thermal effects of framing members.

2. The weighted average U-value of walls shall not exceed the U-value that would result from installing R-13 insulation between wood-framing members and accounting for the effects of framing members.

(d) **Raised-floor Insulation.** Raised floors separating conditioned space from unconditioned space shall meet the requirements of either Item 1 or 2 below:

1. Floors shall be insulated between wood-framing members with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-13 or greater.

**150 (d) 2 – (g)**

2. The weighted average U-value of floor assemblies shall not exceed the U-value that would result from installing R-13 insulation between wood-framing members and accounting for the effects of framing members.

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 150 (d) 1 and 2:** Raised floor insulation may be omitted if the foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums shown in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#), a vapor barrier is placed over the entire floor of the crawl space, and vents are fitted with automatically operated louvers that are temperature actuated.

**(e) Installation of Fireplaces, Decorative Gas Appliances and Gas Logs.**

1. If a masonry or factory-built fireplace is installed, it shall have the following:
  - A. Closeable metal or glass doors covering the entire opening of the firebox;
  - B. A combustion air intake to draw air from the outside of the building directly into the firebox, which is at least six square inches in area and is equipped with a readily accessible, operable, and tight-fitting damper or combustion-air control device; and

**EXCEPTION to Section 150 (e) 1 B:** An outside combustion-air intake is not required if the fireplace will be installed over concrete slab flooring and the fireplace will not be located on an exterior wall.

- C. A flue damper with a readily accessible control.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150 (e) 1 C:** When a gas log, log lighter, or decorative gas appliance is installed in a fireplace, the flue damper shall be blocked open if required by the manufacturer's installation instructions or the California Mechanical Code.

2. Continuous burning pilot lights and the use of indoor air for cooling a firebox jacket, when that indoor air is vented to the outside of the building, are prohibited.

- (f) Infiltration Barrier.** If an infiltration barrier is installed to meet the requirements of [Section 151](#), it must have an air porosity of less than 5 ft.<sup>3</sup> per hour per square foot per inch of mercury pressure difference when tested in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 283-91. If a vapor barrier functions as an infiltration barrier it shall be located on the conditioned side of the exterior framing.

- (g) Vapor Barriers.** In Climate Zones 14 and 16 shown in Figure 1-A, a vapor barrier shall be installed on the conditioned space side of all insulation in all exterior walls, unvented attics, and unvented crawl spaces to protect insulation from condensation.

If a building has a control ventilation crawl space, a vapor barrier shall be placed over the earth floor of the crawl space to reduce moisture entry and protect insulation from condensation, as specified in the alternative to [Section 150 \(d\)](#).

(h) **Space-conditioning Equipment.**

1. Building design heat loss rate and design heat gain rate shall be determined using a method based on any one of the following:
  - A. The American Society of Heating, Refrigeration, and Air-conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) Handbook and Product Directory, Equipment Volume (1996), HVAC Applications Volume (1995), and Fundamentals Volume (1993), or
  - B. The Sheet Metal Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) Installation Standards for Residential Heating and Air Conditioning Systems, or
  - C. The Air Conditioning Contractors of America (ACCA) Manual J.

The design heat loss rate and design heat gain rate are two of the criteria that shall be used for equipment sizing and selection.

**NOTE to Section 150 (h) 1:** Heating systems must meet the minimum heating capacity required by UBC Section 310.11. The furnace output capacity and other specifications are published in the commission's directory of certified equipment or other directories approved by the commission.

2. **Design conditions.**

For the purpose of sizing the space-conditioning (HVAC) system, the indoor design temperatures shall be 70°F for heating and 78°F for cooling. The outdoor design temperatures for heating shall be no lower than the Winter Median of Extremes column. The outdoor design temperatures for cooling shall be from the 0.5 percent Summer Design Dry Bulb and the 0.5 percent Wet Bulb columns for cooling, based on percent-of-year in ASHRAE publication *SPCDX: Climate Data for Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii, and Nevada*, 1982, incorporated herein by reference.

- (i) **Setback Thermostats.** All heating and/or cooling systems other than wood stoves shall have an automatic thermostat with a clock mechanism or other setback mechanism approved by the executive director that shuts the system off during periods of nonuse and that allows the building occupant to automatically set back the thermostat set points for at least two periods within 24 hours.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150 (i):** Gravity gas wall heaters, gravity floor heaters, gravity room heaters, noncentral electric heaters, room air conditioners, and room air-conditioner heat pumps need not comply with this requirement. Additionally, room air-conditioner heat pumps need not comply with [Section 112 \(b\)](#). The resulting increase in energy use due to elimination of the setback thermostat shall be factored into the compliance analysis in accordance with a method prescribed by the executive director.

(j) **Pipe and Tank Systems.**

1. **Storage tank insulation.**

**150 (j) 1 – (k) 1**

- A. Storage gas water heaters with an energy factor  $< 0.58$  shall be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-12 or greater.
  - B. Unfired hot water tanks, such as storage tanks and backup storage tanks for solar water-heating systems, shall be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-12 or greater or have internal insulation of at least R-16 and a label on the exterior of the tank showing the insulation R-value.
2. Piping, whether buried or unburied, for recirculating sections of domestic hot water systems, piping from the heating source to the storage tank for an indirect-fired domestic water-heating system, cooling system piping below 55°F, and the first five feet of hot and cold water pipes from the storage tank for nonrecirculating systems shall be thermally insulated in accordance with Table 1-T.

**TABLE 1-T—PIPE INSULATION REQUIREMENTS  
MINIMUM R-VALUE**

SYSTEM	PIPE DIAMETER	
	Less than or Equal to 2 inches	Greater than 2 inches
Domestic hot water	R-4	R-6
Hydronic heating supply lines	R-4	R-6
Cooling systems (pipes below 55°F)	R-3	R-4

**EXCEPTION to Section 150 (j) 2:** The following piping does not have to be thermally insulated:

- A. Factory-installed piping within space-conditioning equipment; and
- B. Piping that conveys fluids that have a design operating temperature range between 55°F and 105°F.

**NOTE to Section 150 (j) 2:** Where the executive director approves a water heater calculation method for a particular water heating recirculation system, piping insulation requirements shall be those specified in the approved calculation method.

3. Solar water-heating systems and/or collectors shall be certified by the Solar Rating and Certification Corporation.

**(k) Lighting.**

1. Luminaires for general lighting in kitchens shall have lamps with an efficacy of not less than 40 lumens per watt. General lighting must provide a sufficient light level for basic kitchen tasks and provide a uniform pattern of illumination. A luminaire(s) that is (are) the only lighting in a kitchen will be considered general lighting. General lighting shall be controlled by a switch on a readily accessible lighting control panel at an entrance to the kitchen.

Additional luminaires to be used only for specific decorative effects need not meet this requirement.

2. Each room containing a shower or bathtub shall have at least one luminaire with lamp(s) with an efficacy of 40 lumens per watt or greater. If there is more than one luminaire in the room, the high-efficacy luminaire shall be switched at an entrance to the room.

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 150 (k) 2:** A high-efficacy luminaire need not be installed in a bathroom if:

- A. A luminaire with lamps with an efficacy of 40 lumens per watt or greater is installed in a utility room, laundry room, or garage; and
- B. All luminaires permanently mounted to the residence providing outdoor lighting shall be installed with the following characteristics:
  - (1) Luminaires with lamps with 40 lumens per watt or greater; or
  - (2) Luminaires with lamps with an efficacy of less than 40 lumens per watt shall be equipped with a motion sensor.

**Note:** When using this alternative for multiple bathrooms, after complying with Item B above for the first bathroom, each additional bathroom in which a high-efficacy luminaire is not installed must comply with Item A above alone.

3. Luminaires installed to meet the 40 lumens per watt requirements of [Section 150 \(k\) 1](#) or 2 shall not contain medium base incandescent lamp sockets, and shall be on separate switches from any incandescent lighting.
  4. All incandescent lighting fixtures recessed into insulated ceilings shall be approved for zero-clearance insulation cover (IC) by Underwriters Laboratories or other testing/rating laboratories recognized by the International Conference of Building Officials.
- (l) **Slab Edge Insulation.** Material used for slab edge insulation shall meet the following minimum specifications:
1. Water absorption rate no greater than 0.3 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C 271-94.
  2. Water vapor permeance no greater than 2.0 perm/inch when tested in accordance with ASTM E 96-95.
  3. Concrete slab perimeter insulation must be protected from physical damage and ultraviolet light deterioration.
- (m) **Air-distribution System Ducts, Plenums, and Fans.**
1. **UMC compliance.** All air-distribution system ducts and plenums, including, but not limited to, building cavities, mechanical closets, air-handler boxes and support platforms used as ducts or plenums, shall be installed, sealed and insulated to meet the requirement of the ICBO 1997 UMC Sections 601, 603, 604, and Standard 6-3, incorporated herein by reference. Portions conveying conditioned air shall either be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2 (or any higher level required by UMC Section 604) or be enclosed entirely in conditioned space. Connections of metal ducts and the inner core of flexible ducts shall be mechanically fastened. Openings shall be sealed with mastic, tape, aerosol

## 150 (m) 1 – 3

sealant, or other duct-closure system that meets the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B. If mastic or tape is used to seal openings greater than 1/4 inch, the combination of mastic and either mesh or tape shall be used.

### 2. **Factory-fabricated duct systems.**

- A. All factory-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181 for ducts and closure systems, including collars, connections, and splices.
- B. All pressure-sensitive tapes, heat-activated tapes, and mastics used in the manufacture of rigid fiberglass ducts shall comply with UL 181.
- C. All pressure-sensitive tapes and mastics used with flexible ducts shall comply with UL 181 or UL 181B.

### 3. **Field-fabricated duct systems.**

- A. Factory-made rigid fiberglass and flexible ducts for field-fabricated duct systems shall comply with UL 181. All pressure-sensitive tapes, mastics, aerosol sealants, or other closure systems used for installing field-fabricated duct systems shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B.

#### B. **Mastic sealants and mesh.**

- i. Sealants shall comply with UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B, and be nontoxic and water resistant.
- ii. Sealants for interior applications shall pass ASTM tests C 731(extrudability after aging) and D 2202 (slump test on vertical surfaces), incorporated herein by reference.
- iii. Sealants for exterior applications shall pass ASTM tests C 731, C 732 (artificial weathering test), and D 2202, incorporated herein by reference.
- iv. Sealants and meshes shall be rated for exterior use.

- C. **Pressure-sensitive tape.** Pressure-sensitive tapes shall comply with UL 181, UL 181A, or UL 181B.

#### D. **Drawbands used with flexible duct.**

- i. Drawbands shall be either stainless-steel worm-drive hose clamps or UV-resistant nylon duct ties.
- ii. Drawbands shall have a minimum tensile strength rating of 150 pounds.
- iii. Drawbands shall be tightened as recommended by the manufacturer with an adjustable tensioning tool.

- E. **Aerosol-sealant closures.**
- i. Aerosol sealants shall meet the applicable requirements of UL 181, 181A, or 181B and be applied according to manufacturer specifications.
  - ii. Tapes or mastics used in combination with aerosol sealing shall meet the requirements of this section.
4. All duct insulation product R-values shall be based on insulation only (excluding air films, vapor barriers, or other duct components) and tested C-values at 75°F mean temperature at the installed thickness, in accordance with ASTM C 518-85 or ASTM C 177-85, incorporated herein by reference, and certified pursuant to Section 118.
  5. The installed thickness of duct insulation used to determine its R-value shall be determined as follows:
    - A. For duct board, duct liner, and factory-made rigid ducts not normally subjected to compression, the nominal insulation thickness shall be used.
    - B. For duct wrap, installed thickness shall be assumed to be 75 percent (25 percent compression) of nominal thickness.
    - C. For factory-made flexible air ducts, the installed thickness shall be determined by dividing the difference between the actual outside diameter and nominal inside diameter by two.
  6. Insulated flexible duct products installed to meet this requirement must include labels, in maximum intervals of 3 feet, showing the thermal performance R-value for the duct insulation itself (excluding air films, vapor barriers, or other duct components), based on the tests in [Section 150 \(m\) 2](#) and the installed thickness determined by [Section 150 \(m\) 3 C](#).
  7. All fan systems, regardless of volumetric capacity, that exhaust air from the building to the outside shall be provided with backdraft or automatic dampers to prevent air leakage.
  8. All gravity ventilating systems that serve conditioned space shall be provided with either automatic or readily accessible, manually operated dampers in all openings to the outside except combustion inlet and outlet air openings and elevator shaft vents.

**EXCEPTION to Section 150 (m) 1:** The requirements do not apply to ducts and fans integral to a wood heater or fireplace.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Public Resources Code, Sections 25218(e), 25402, and 25402.1. Reference: Public Resources Code, Section 25402.



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

**SUBCHAPTER 8**  
**LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS—PERFORMANCE AND**  
**PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES**

**SECTION 151 – PERFORMANCE AND PRESCRIPTIVE COMPLIANCE APPROACHES**

(a) **Basic Requirements.** New low-rise residential buildings shall meet all of the following:

1. The requirements of [Sections 111 through 118](#) applicable to new residential buildings.
2. The requirements of [Section 150](#) (mandatory features).
3. Either the performance standards (energy budgets) or the prescriptive standards (alternative component packages) set forth in this section for the climate zone in which the building will be located. Climate zones are shown in [Figure 1-A](#).

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 151 (a) 3:** If a single contiguous subdivision or tract falls in more than one climate zone, all buildings in the subdivision or tract may be designed to meet the performance or prescriptive standards for the climate zone which contains 50 percent or more of the dwelling units.

**NOTE to Section 151 (a) 3:** The California Energy Commission shall periodically update, publish, and make available to interested persons and local building departments a document entitled *California Climate Zone Descriptions for New Buildings*, (July 1995), which shall contain a precise description of the metes and bounds for climate zone boundaries depicted in Figure 1-A and a list of the communities in each zone.

4. For other provisions applicable to new low-rise residential buildings, refer to [Section 100 \(c\)](#).

(b) **Performance Standards.** A building complies with the performance standard if its combined calculated depletable energy use for water heating [Section 151 (b) 1] and space conditioning [[Section 151 \(b\) 2](#)] is less than or equal to the combined maximum allowable energy use for both water heating and space conditioning, even if the building fails to meet either the water heating or space conditioning budget alone.

1. **Water-heating budgets.** The budgets for water-heating systems are those calculated from [Equation \(1-N\)](#).

**151 (b) 1 EQUATION (1-N) – (c) 1**

**EQUATION (1-N)—ANNUAL WATER HEATING BUDGET (AWB) EQUATION**

For dwelling units less than 2500 ft.<sup>2</sup>:

$$AWB(kBtu / yr. - ft.^2) = \frac{(16370)}{CFA} + 4.85$$

For dwelling units equal to or greater than 2500 ft.<sup>2</sup>:

$$AWB(kBtu / yr. - ft.^2) = \frac{(26125)}{CFA}$$

**WHERE**

*CFA* = The building's conditioned floor area in square feet.

The annual water-heating budget calculated from Equation (1-N) may be met by either:

- A. Calculating the energy consumption of the proposed water-heating system using an approved calculation method without an external insulation wrap; or
- B. Installing any gas storage-type nonrecirculating water-heating system that does not exceed 50 gallons of capacity, and that meets the minimum standards specified in the Appliance Efficiency Standards.

**NOTE:** Storage gas water heaters with an energy factor of less than 0.58 must be externally wrapped with insulation having an installed thermal resistance of R-12 or greater in accordance with Section 150 (j).

2. Space-conditioning budgets. The space-conditioning budgets for each climate zone shall be the calculated consumption of energy from depletable sources required for space conditioning in buildings in which the basic requirements of [Section 151 \(a\)](#) and the measures in Alternative Component Package D are installed. To determine the space-conditioning budget, use an approved calculation method.
- (c) **Compliance Demonstration Requirements for Performance Standards.** The application for a building permit shall include documentation which demonstrates, using an approved calculation method, that the new building has been designed so that its energy use from depletable energy sources does not exceed the combined water-heating and space-conditioning energy budgets for the appropriate climate zone.
1. To demonstrate compliance, the applicant's documentation shall:
    - A. Determine the combined energy budget for the proposed building by adding the following:

- i. The annual water-heating budget calculated from Equation (1-N) (kBtu/yr.-ft.<sup>2</sup>) and
- ii. The annual space-conditioning budget (kBtu/yr.-ft.<sup>2</sup>) as determined pursuant to Section 151 (b) 2.

- B. Calculate the source energy consumption total of the proposed building, using the proposed building's actual glazing area, orientation, and distribution, and its actual energy conservation and other features, including the actual water-heating, space-conditioning equipment and duct conditions and locations.

Include in the calculation the energy required for building cooling even if the building plans do not indicate that air conditioning will be installed.

2. The proposed building design complies if the energy consumption calculated pursuant to Section 151 (c) 1 B is equal to or less than the combined energy budget established in [Section 151 \(c\) 1 A](#).

**MULTIPLE ORIENTATION ALTERNATIVE to Section 151 (c):** A permit applicant may demonstrate compliance with the energy budget requirements of [Section 151 \(a\)](#) and [\(b\)](#) for any orientation of the same building model if the documentation demonstrates that the building model with its proposed designs and features would comply in each of the four cardinal orientations.

In the four compliance demonstrations, all designs and features must be the same, except that a model may differ in its shading in order to show compliance in the four cardinal directions.

- (d) **Compliance Methods for Performance Standards.** Compliance with the energy budget requirements of [Section 151 \(a\) 3](#) and [\(b\)](#) must be demonstrated either by:

1. Using a point system approved by the commission including any computer programs approved by the executive director that are based on an approved point system; or
2. Using the compliance version of the commission's Public Domain Computer Program or any alternative calculation method approved by the commission for use in complying with [Section 151 \(a\) and \(b\)](#).

**NOTE:** Compliance with the water-heating budget need not be demonstrated using any of the calculation methods referred to in Section 151 (d), if all the requirements of [Section 151 \(b\) 1 B](#) are met.

- (e) **Required Calculation Assumptions.** The commission shall publish the assumptions and calculation methods it used to develop the standards for low-rise residential buildings, including those specified in [Section 151](#). In determining the water-heating and space-conditioning budgets and calculating the energy use of the proposed building design, the applicant shall use only these assumptions and calculation methods (or alternative assumptions and methods approved by the commission or its executive director).

1. Such assumptions shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

**151 (e) 1 – (f)**

- A. The operating conditions regarding indoor temperature; occupancy loads and schedules; equipment loads and operation schedules, including lighting, HVAC, and miscellaneous electrical; and outdoor weather conditions;
- B. The physical characteristics of building pressurization, interior heat transfer, film coefficients, solar heat gain coefficient and operation of installed shading devices, ground temperatures, and the method of determining slab heat loss;
- C. The applicable modeling procedures for the assumptions, design conditions, and physical characteristics described in [Section 151 \(e\) 1](#).

**EXCEPTION to Section 151 (e) 1:** The commission may approve alternative schedules, assumptions, and performance modeling procedures that may be used in lieu of those described in [Section 151 \(e\) 1](#), provided such alternatives do not alter the efficiency level required by these standards.

- 2. The total calculated annual energy consumption shall include all energy used for comfort heating, comfort cooling, ventilation for the health and comfort of occupants, and service water heating.
  - 3. Heat transfers within the same building to adjacent spaces that are not covered by the permit and that are independently provided with space conditioning may be considered to be zero. Heat transfers to spaces not yet provided with space conditioning may be modeled as separate unconditioned zones, or as outdoor conditions.
  - 4. The total calculated annual energy consumption need not include energy from any nondepletable sources, regardless of the purpose of the energy consumed.
  - 5. The U-value of installed manufactured fenestration products shall be those certified by an approved independent certification organization in accordance with [Section 116](#). The U-value of field-fabricated fenestration products shall be those values from [Section 116](#), Table 1-D, based on an approved method that determines the area weighted average U-value for generic types of products.
  - 6. Solar heat gain coefficients for interior shading devices used with fenestration products shall be 0.68 for draperies, 0.47 for blinds, and 0.47 for roller shades until December 31, 2001. Beginning January 1, 2002, roller shades shall not be used as an interior shading device for compliance. No other solar heat gain coefficients shall be used for interior shading. The calculations may include the effects of draperies and insect screens without installation being verified at the time of final inspection.
- (f) **Prescriptive Standards/Alternative Component Packages.** Buildings that comply with the prescriptive standards shall be designed, constructed, and equipped to meet all of the requirements of one of the alternative packages of components shown in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) for the appropriate climate zone shown in [Figure 1-A](#). Installed components shall meet the following requirements:

1. **Insulation.**

- A. Ceiling, wall, slab floor perimeter, and raised-floor insulation which has an R-value equal to or higher than that shown in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) shall be installed. The minimum opaque ceiling, wall (including heated basements and crawl spaces), and raised-floor R-values shown are for insulation installed between wood-framing members.

**ALTERNATIVE to Section 151 (f) 1 A:** The insulation requirements of [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) may also be met by ceiling, wall, or floor assemblies that meet equivalent minimum R-values that consider the effects of all elements of the assembly, using a calculation method approved by the executive director.

**EXCEPTION to Section 151 (f) 1 A:** Raised-floor insulation may be omitted if the foundation walls are insulated to meet the wall insulation minimums shown in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#), a vapor barrier is placed over the entire floor of the crawl space, and the vents are fitted with automatically operated louvers.

- B. The minimum depth of concrete-slab floor perimeter insulation shall be 16 inches or the depth of the footing of the building, whichever is less.

**EXCEPTION to Section 151 (f) 1 B:** Perimeter insulation is not required along the slab edge between conditioned space and the concrete slab of an attached unconditioned enclosed space, covered porches, or covered patios.

2. **Glazing.**

- A. Installed fenestration products shall have U-values equal to or lower than those shown in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#). The U-value of installed fenestration products shall be determined pursuant to [Section 151 \(e\) 5](#).
- B. Total glazing area shall not exceed the percentage of conditioned floor area specified in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#).
- C. For Package A, the south-facing glazing area percentage (glass area/conditioned floor area) shall not be less than the percentage in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#). South-facing glazing includes glazing in ceilings which is horizontal, tilted to the south, or tilted in any other direction at a pitch less than 1:12. North-facing, east-facing, and west-facing glazing includes glazing in ceilings which is tilted at a pitch of 1:12 or greater to the north, east, and west, respectively.

3. **Shading.** Where [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) require a solar heat gain coefficient of 0.40 or lower for south-facing, east-facing, or west-facing shading, the requirements shall be met by either:

- A. A fenestration product listed by the manufacturer to have the required solar heat gain coefficient; or
- B. An exterior operable louver or other exterior shading device that meets the required solar heat gain coefficient; or

- C. A combination of exterior shading device and fenestration product to achieve the same performance as achieved in Item A.
- D. The shading requirements for south-facing glazing may also be met by optimal overhangs installed so that the south-facing glazing is fully shaded at solar noon on August 21 and substantially exposed to direct sunlight at solar noon on December 21.

Except where the UBC requires emergency egress, exterior shading devices must be permanently attached to the outside of the structure with fasteners that require additional tools to remove (as opposed to clips, hooks, latches, snaps, or ties).

- 4. **Thermal mass.** Thermal mass required for Packages A and C in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) shall meet or exceed the minimum interior mass capacity specified in Table 1-U.

**TABLE 1-U—INTERIOR MASS CAPACITY REQUIREMENTS FOR PACKAGES A AND C**

PACKAGE	MINIMUM INTERIOR MASS CAPACITY
A	35.9 x south glazing area (ft. <sup>2</sup> )
C (slab floor)	2.36 x ground floor area (ft. <sup>2</sup> )
C (raised floor)	0.18 x ground floor area (ft. <sup>2</sup> )

The mass requirements in Table 1-U may be met by calculating the combined interior mass capacity of the mass materials using Equation 1-P.

**EQUATION (1-P)—CALCULATION OF INTERIOR MASS CAPACITY EQUATION**

$$IMC = [(A_1 \times UIMC_1) + (A_2 \times UIMC_2) \dots + (A_n \times UIMC_n)]$$

**WHERE:**

- $A_n$  = Area of mass material,  $n$ .
- $UIMC_n$  = Unit interior mass capacity of mass material,  $n$ .

**NOTE:** The commission's Residential Manual shall list the unit interior mass capacity (UIMC) of various mass materials.

- 5. **Continuous infiltration barrier.** Continuous infiltration barriers required in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) shall be installed over the inside face of framing in ceilings and over the inside or outside face of framing in exterior walls. Where ceilings are plank-and-beam construction exposed to the conditioned space, the barrier shall be placed on top of the planking, and the wall/ceiling joints shall be sealed with caulking or sealant. All openings in the building envelope for plumbing, electrical conduits and

boxes, gas lines and valves, luminaires, ducts, flues, and other elements which penetrate the infiltration barrier, shall be sealed with permanent tape or sealant.

6. **Air-to-air heat exchanger.** The air-to-air heat exchanger required in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#) shall be capable of ventilating the dwelling unit at a rate equal to at least 0.7 times the volume of the conditioned space per hour.

This requirement may be met by a central mechanical ventilation system with an integral air-to-air heat exchanger or by one or more single package room mechanical ventilators with an integral air-to-air heat exchanger.

7. **Heating system type.** Heating system types shall be installed as required in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#). A gas-heating system is a natural or liquefied petroleum gas-heating system. All supply ducts shall either be in conditioned space or be insulated to a minimum installed level of R-4.2.
8. **Space heating and space cooling.** All space-heating and space-cooling systems must comply with minimum appliance efficiency standards as specified in [Sections 110 through 112](#).
9. **Water-heating systems.** All water-heating systems must meet the water-heating budgets calculated from [Equation \(1-N\)](#).

**NOTE to Section 151 (f) 9:** Any gas-type domestic water heater of 50 gallons or less, which is certified as meeting the Appliance Efficiency Standards, and which meets tank insulation requirements of [Section 150 \(j\)](#) may be assumed to meet the water heating budget.

10. **Setback thermostats.** All heating systems shall have an automatic thermostat with a clock mechanism or other setback mechanism approved by the executive director, which the building occupant can manually program to automatically set back the thermostat set points for at least two periods within 24 hours. The exception to [Section 150 \(i\)](#) shall not apply to any heating system installed in conjunction with the packages specified in [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#).



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

**TABLE 1-Z1—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 1**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R19	R19	R29	R21
“Heavy mass” walls	(R8.5)	(R5.0)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R8.5]	[R6.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R19	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	REQ	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	REQ	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z2**

**TABLE 1-Z2—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 2**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R29	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R2.3)	(R2.2)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.5]	[R4.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	14%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z3—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 3**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R25	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R4.5)	(R3.5)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R5.0]	[R5.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.40	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16

**TABLE 1-Z4**

**TABLE 1-Z4—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 4**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R25	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R3.5)	(R3.5)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R5.0]	[R5.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.40	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z5—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 5**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R25	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R2.4)	(R2.3)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.5]	[R4.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.40	0.7
Maximum total area	NR	14%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16

**TABLE 1-Z6**

**TABLE 1-Z6—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 6**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R19	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R21	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R1.5)	(R1.6)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.0]	[R4.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	NR	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R21	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.50	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z7—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 7**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R19	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R13	R21	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R1.7)	(R1.4)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.0]	[R3.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	NR	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R13	R21	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.50	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	14%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16



**TABLE 1-Z8**

**TABLE 1-Z8—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 8**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R21	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R1.6)	(R1.6)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.0]	[R4.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	NR	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R21	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.50	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	14%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z9—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 9**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R38	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R21	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R1.4)	(R1.5)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.0]	[R4.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R21	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.50	0.75
Maximum total area	NR	14%	14%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16

**TABLE 1-Z10**

**TABLE 1-Z10—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 10**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R30
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R25	R13
“Heavy mass” walls	(R1.9)	(R2.0)	NA	(R2.44)
“Light mass” walls	[R4.5]	[R4.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R0
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	1.10	0.65	0.40	075
Maximum total area	NR	16%	16%	20%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z11—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 11**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R29	R19
“Heavy mass” walls	(R5.0)	(R5.5)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R6.0]	[R6.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	14%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16

**TABLE 1-Z12**

**TABLE 1-Z12—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 12**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R29	R19
“Heavy mass” walls	(R3.5)	(R3.5)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R5.0]	[R5.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	NR	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R4
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	14%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z13—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 13**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R30	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R13	R19	R29	R19
“Heavy mass” walls	(R4.0)	(R4.0)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R5.5]	[R6.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	NR	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R13	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	14%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.40	0.40	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	NR	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16

**TABLE 1-Z14**

**TABLE 1-Z14—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 14**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R38	R38	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R19	R19	R29	R21
“Heavy mass” walls	(R7.0)	(R5.5)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R8.0]	[R6.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R19	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.15	0.15	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	REQ	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	REQ	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**TABLE 1-Z15—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR  
CLIMATE ZONE 15**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R30	R38	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R19	R19	R29	R21
“Heavy mass” walls	(R5.5)	(R4.5)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R7.0]	[R6.0]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R0
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	NR
Raised floors	R19	R19	R21	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R4
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.65
Maximum total area	NR	16%	16%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.40
West-facing glazing	0.15	0.15	0.40	0.40
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	0.40	0.40
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	REQ	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	REQ	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

NR = Not Required

NA = Not Applicable

REQ = Required

MIN = Minimum

See notes following Table 1-Z16



**TABLE 1-Z16**

**TABLE 1-Z16—ALTERNATIVE COMPONENT PACKAGES FOR CLIMATE ZONE 16**

COMPONENT	PACKAGE <sup>1</sup>			
	A	B	C <sup>1</sup>	D
<b>BUILDING ENVELOPE</b>				
Insulation minimums <sup>2</sup>				
Ceiling	R38	R38	R49	R38
Wood-frame walls	R19	R19	R29	R21
“Heavy mass” walls	(R9.5)	(R7.0)	NA	(R4.76)
“Light mass” walls	[R9.5]	[R7.5]	NA	NA
Below-grade walls	NA	NA	NA	R13
Slab floor perimeter	R7	R7	R7	R7
Raised floors	R19	R19	R30	R19 <sup>2</sup>
Concrete raised floors	NA	NA	NA	R8
<b>GLAZING</b>				
Maximum U-value <sup>3</sup>	0.65	0.65	0.40	0.60
Maximum total area	NR	16%	14%	16%
Maximum total nonsouth-facing area	9.6%	NR	NR	NR
Minimum south-facing area	6.4%	NR	NR	NR
<b>SOLAR HEAT GAIN COEFFICIENT<sup>4</sup></b>				
South-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
West-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
East-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
North-facing glazing	NR	NR	NR	NR
<b>THERMAL MASS<sup>5</sup></b>	REQ	NR	REQ	NR
<b>INFILTRATION CONTROL</b>				
Continuous barrier	NR	REQ	NR	NR
Air-to-air heat exchanger	NR	REQ	NR	NR
<b>SPACE-HEATING SYSTEM<sup>6</sup></b>				
Electric-resistant allowed	No	No	Yes <sup>7</sup>	No
If gas, AFUE =	78%	78%	78%	MIN
If heat pump,				
split system HSPF <sup>8</sup> =	6.8	6.8	6.8	MIN
Single package system HSPF =	6.6	6.6	6.6	MIN
<b>SPACE-COOLING SYSTEM</b>				
If split system A/C, SEER =	10.0	10.0	10.0	MIN
If single package A/C, SEER =	9.7	9.7	9.7	MIN
<b>DOMESTIC WATER-HEATING TYPE</b>				
System must meet budget, see Section 151 (b) 1 and (f) 9	Any	Any	Any <sup>9</sup>	Any

Legend:

- NR = Not Required
- NA = Not Applicable
- REQ = Required
- MIN = Minimum

[See notes following Table 1-Z16](#)

**NOTES TO THE LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL PACKAGES IN  
TABLES 1-Z1 THROUGH 1-Z16**

<sup>1</sup>Package A is a passive solar design requiring a significant amount of south-facing glazing, a small amount of nonsouth-facing glazing, and a large area of thermal mass. Package B allows a small area of glazing, with light and heavy mass wall alternatives; some zones require continuous infiltration barriers and air-to-air heat exchangers. Package C is the only package that allows electric-resistance space heating. Package C may be used only if the building is in an area (1) where natural gas is not currently available and (2) where extension of natural gas service is impractical, as determined by the natural gas utility. Package D allows more glazing area in some zones with moderately high insulation levels; slab edge insulation is required in Climate Zone 16.

<sup>2</sup>The R-values shown for ceiling, wood frame wall and raised floor are for wood-frame construction with insulation installed between the framing members. For alternative construction assemblies, see [Section 151 \(f\) 1 A](#).

The heavy mass wall R-value in parentheses is the minimum R-value for the entire wall assembly if the wall weight exceeds 40 pounds per square foot. The light mass wall R-value in brackets is the minimum R-value for the entire assembly if the heat capacity of the wall meets or exceeds the result of multiplying the bracketed minimum R-value by 0.65. Any insulation installed on heavy or light mass walls must be integral with, or installed on the outside of, the exterior mass. The inside surface of the thermal mass, including plaster or gypsum board in direct contact with the masonry wall, shall be exposed to the room air. The exterior wall used to meet the R-value in parentheses cannot also be used to meet the thermal mass requirement.

<sup>3</sup>For glazing U-value rating procedures and labeling requirements see [Section 116 \(a\) 2](#).

<sup>4</sup>If the package specifies a solar heat gain coefficient the builder shall meet the requirements of [Section 151 \(f\) 3](#).

<sup>5</sup>If the package requires thermal mass, meet the requirements of [Section 151 \(f\) 4](#).

<sup>6</sup>Automatic setback thermostats must be installed in conjunction with all space-heating systems in accordance with [Section 151 \(f\) 9](#).

<sup>7</sup>Ducts in Package C shall be insulated to an installed value of at least R-8.

<sup>8</sup>HSPF means "heating seasonal performance factor."

<sup>9</sup>Electric-resistance water heating is allowed as the main water heating source in Package C only if the water heater is located within the building envelope and a minimum of 25 percent of the energy for water heating is provided by a passive or active solar system or a wood stove boiler. The wood stove boiler credit is not allowed in Climate Zones 8, 10, and 15, nor in localities that do not allow wood stoves.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Public Resources Code, Sections 25218(e), 25402, and 25402.1. Reference: Public Resources Code, Section 25402

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

**SUBCHAPTER 9**  
**LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS—ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS**  
**IN EXISTING LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS**

**SECTION 152 – ENERGY EFFICIENCY STANDARDS FOR ADDITIONS AND ALTERATIONS IN EXISTING BUILDINGS THAT WILL BE LOW-RISE RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCIES**

- (a) **Additions.** Additions to existing residential buildings shall meet the requirements of [Sections 111 through 118](#), [Section 150](#), and either [Section 152 \(a\) 1](#) or [2](#).

**EXCEPTION 1 to Section 152 (a):** Existing structures with R-11 framed walls showing compliance with [Section 152 \(a\) 2](#) (Performance Approach) are exempt from [Section 150 \(c\)](#).

**EXCEPTION 2 to Section 152 (a):** Any dual-glazed greenhouse window and dual-glazed skylight installed in an addition complies with [Section 151 \(f\) 2 A](#).

**EXCEPTION 3 to Section 152 (a):** If the addition will increase the total number of water heaters in the building, one of the following types of water heaters may be installed to comply with [Section 152 \(a\) 1](#) or [Section 152 \(a\) 2 A](#), and [Section 152 \(c\)](#):

1. A gas storage nonrecirculating water-heating system that does not exceed 50 gallons capacity; or
2. If no natural gas is connected to the building, an electric storage water heater that does not exceed 50 gallons capacity, has an energy factor not less than 0.90; or
3. A water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item 1 above; or if no natural gas is connected to the building, a water-heating system determined by the executive director to use no more energy than the one specified in Item 2 above.

For prescriptive compliance with [Section 152 \(a\) 1](#), the water-heating systems requirement in [Section 151 \(f\) 8](#) shall not apply. For performance compliance for the addition alone, only the space-conditioning budgets of [Section 151 \(b\) 2](#) shall be used; the water-heating budgets of [Section 151 \(b\) 1](#) shall not apply.

The performance approach for the existing building and the addition in [Section 152 \(a\) 2 B](#) may be used to show compliance, regardless of the type of water heater installed.

**EXCEPTION 4 to Section 152 (a):** When heating and/or cooling will be extended to an addition from the existing system(s), the existing equipment need not comply with [Title 24, Part 6](#). The heating system capacity must be adequate to meet the minimum requirements of UBC Section 310.11.

1. **Prescriptive approach.** Additions to existing buildings shall meet the following additional requirements:
  - A. Additions up to 100 square feet shall not exceed 50 square feet of glazing and the glazing U-value shall not exceed 0.75; or
  - B. Additions less than 1000 square feet shall meet all the requirements of Package D [[Section 151 \(f\)](#) and [Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16](#)], except that the addition's total glazing area limit is the maximum allowed in Package D plus the glazing area that was removed by the addition, and the wall insulation value need not exceed R-13.

**152 (a) 1 – (b) 2**

**EXCEPTION to Section 152 (a) 1 B:** If an addition is less than 500 square feet, glazing may have a U-value not to exceed 0.75 in lieu of any lower U-value required by the package.

- C. Additions of 1000 square feet or greater shall meet all the requirements of Package D [Section 151 (f) and Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16].
2. **Performance approach.** Performance calculations shall meet the requirements of Section 151 (a) through (e), pursuant to either Item A or B, below.
- A. The addition complies if the addition alone meets the combined water-heating and space-conditioning energy budgets.
  - B. The addition complies if the energy efficiency of the existing building is improved such that the source energy consumption of the improved existing building and the addition is equal to or less than that of the unimproved existing building plus an addition that complies with the applicable energy budget.
- (b) **Alterations.** Alterations to existing residential buildings or alterations in conjunction with a change in building occupancy to a low-rise residential occupancy shall meet either Item 1 or 2 below.
1. **Prescriptive approach.** The altered component and any newly installed equipment serving the alteration shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110 through 118 and 150; and
- A. Alterations that add fenestration area to a building shall be limited to a maximum 0.75 U-value for new fenestration products.
  - B. New space-conditioning systems or components shall:
    - i. Meet the requirements of Section 150 (h) and (i); and
    - ii. Be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type unless it can be demonstrated that the source energy use of the new system is more efficient than the existing system.
  - C. New service water-heating systems or components shall:
    - (i) Meet the requirements of Section 150; and
    - (ii) Be limited to natural gas, liquefied petroleum gas, or the existing fuel type unless it can be demonstrated that the source energy use of the new system is more efficient than the existing system.
2. **Performance approach.**
- A. The altered components shall meet the applicable requirements of Sections 110 through 118 and 150; and

**152 (b) 2 – (d)**

**B. Either:**

- i. The permitted space alone, which shall be a minimum of the square footage of the room in which the alteration is made, shall comply with [Section 151](#); or
- ii. The energy efficiency of the existing building shall be improved so that the building meets the energy budget in [Section 151](#) that would apply if the existing building was unchanged and the permitted space alone complied with Item i. The permitted space shall be a minimum of the square footage of the room in which the alteration is made.

**EXCEPTION to Section 152 (b) 1 A:** Any dual-glazed greenhouse window and dual-glazed skylight installed as part of an alteration complies with the U-value requirements applicable to prescriptive alterations.

**NOTE:** Fenestration products repaired or replaced, not as part of an alteration, need not comply with the U-value requirements applicable to alterations.

**EXCEPTION to 152 (b) 2 B:** When the existing fuel type is electric, the existing or replacement equipment for heating, cooling and/or domestic water heating of the proposed building shall be assumed to be the same fuel type as the standard building.

- (c) Electric-resistance water-heating or space-conditioning systems may be installed in or in conjunction with an addition only if the electric-resistance system meets the applicable energy budget(s) from [Section 151 \(b\)](#) pursuant to [Section 152 \(a\) 2](#).
- (d) Any addition or alteration may comply with the requirements of [Title 24, Part 6](#) by meeting the requirements for new buildings for the building as a whole.

**NOTE:** Authority cited: Public Resources Code, Sections 25218(e), 25402, and 25402.1 Reference: Public Resources Code, Section 25402.

**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

**CALIFORNIA MECHANICAL CODE  
PART 4, TITLE 24  
CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS**

**CHAPTER 6  
DUCTS**

**Adoption Table 4-10A**

CODE SECTION	CEC
Entire 1997 UMC as noted in this table	
601	X <sup>1</sup>
603	X <sup>1</sup>
604	X <sup>1</sup>
Standard 6-3	X <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Adopted by reference for Occupancies A, B, E, F, M, R, and S; see [Sections 118, 124, 150, and 151](#).



**THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.**

## **APPENDIX 1-A**

### **STANDARDS REFERENCED IN ENERGY EFFICIENCY REGULATIONS**

#### **STATE OF CALIFORNIA**

Appliance Efficiency Regulations  
Quality Standards for Insulating Material  
Nonresidential Manual  
Residential Manual  
Various Directories for Certified Appliances

Available from: California Energy Commission  
Publications Office  
1516 Ninth Street, MS-13  
Sacramento, California 95814-5512  
(916) 654-5200

#### **CONSUMER GUIDE TO CERTIFIED INSULATING MATERIALS**

Available from: Consumer Affairs  
Insulation Quality Standards  
(916) 574-2046

#### **INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE OF BUILDING OFFICIALS**

*Uniform Building Code*, 1997 Edition  
*Uniform Mechanical Code*, 1997 Edition

Available from: International Conference of Building Officials  
5360 South Workman Mill Road  
Whittier, California 90601  
(562) 699-0541

#### **AIR-CONDITIONING AND REFRIGERATION INSTITUTE**

ARI 340/360-93	Standard for Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment
ARI 365-94	Standard for Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air-Conditioning Condensing Units
ARI 550-92	Standard for Centrifugal or Rotary Screw Water-Chilling Packages
ARI 590-1992	Standard for Positive Displacement Compressor Reciprocating Water-Chilling Packages

Available from: Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute  
4301 North Fairfax Drive, Suite 425  
Arlington, Virginia 22203  
(703) 524-8800

## **APPENDIX 1-A**

### **AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS OF AMERICA**

Manual J

Available from: Air Conditioning Contractors of America, Inc.  
1712 New Hampshire Avenue, NW  
Washington, DC 20009  
(202) 483-9370  
FAX (202) 232-8545

### **AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATION, AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (NATIONAL PUBLICATIONS)**

Handbook and Product Directory  
Equipment Volume, 1996 Edition  
HVAC Applications Volume, Chapter 45, 1995 Edition  
Fundamentals Volume, 1993 Edition

#### **STANDARDS**

ANSI/ASHRAE

55-1992

Thermal Environment Conditions for Human Occupancy

ASHRAE 62-89

Standards for Natural and Mechanical Ventilation and Ventilation for  
Acceptable Indoor Air Quality

Available from: ASHRAE  
1791 Tullie Circle N.E.  
Atlanta, Georgia 30329  
(404) 636-8400

### **AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATION, AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS (REGIONAL PUBLICATIONS)**

Recommended Outdoor Design Temperatures for Northern California, 1977

Available from: ASHRAE  
Golden Gate Chapter  
370 Brannan Street  
San Francisco, California 94102  
(415) 495-4552

Climatic Data For Region X, Arizona, California, Hawaii, and Nevada, Publication SPCDX, 1982

Available from: ASHRAE - Climatic Data  
Southern California Chapter  
Post Office Box 6306  
Alhambra, California 91802

**AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS – Z21 SERIES**

ANSI Z21.13-91 Standard for Gas-Fired Low Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers  
 ANSI Z21.47-1993 Standard for Gas-Fired Central Furnace  
 ANSI Z21.56-1994 Standards for Gas-Fired Swimming Pool Heaters

Available from: American Gas Association Laboratories  
 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road  
 Cleveland, Ohio 44131  
 (216) 524-4990

**AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS**

ASTM E 283-91 Standard Method of Test for Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows,  
 Curtain Walls, and Doors  
 ASTM C 335-95 Steady State Heat Transfer of Horizontal Pipe Insulation  
 ASTM C 177-85 Standard Test Method for Steady State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal  
 Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded Hot Plate Apparatus  
 ASTM C 518-91 Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and  
 Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter  
 Apparatus  
 ASTM C 731-93a Standard Test Method for Extrudability, After Package Aging, of Latex  
 Sealants  
 ASTM C 732-95 Standard Test Method for Aging Effects of Artificial Weathering on Latex  
 Sealants  
 ASTM C 271-94 Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Core Materials for Structural  
 Sandwich Constructions  
 ASTM D 2202-93a Standard Test Method for Slump of Sealants  
 ASTM E 96-95 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials

Available from: American Society for Testing and Materials  
 100 Barr Harbor Drive  
 West Conshohocken, Pennsylvania 19428-2959  
 (610) 832-9500

**AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS/UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES**

UL 181 Standard for Safety for Factory-made Air Ducts and Connectors  
 UL 181A Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Rigid Air Ducts and Air  
 Connectors  
 UL 181B Standard for Safety for Closure Systems for Use with Flexible Air Ducts and  
 Air Connectors  
 ANSI/UL 726-90 Oil-Fired Boiler Assemblies  
 ANSI/UL 727-86 Oil-Fired Control Furnaces  
 UL 731-95 Oil-Fired Unit Heaters  
 UL 795-94 Commercial-Industrial Gas-Heating Equipment

Available from: Underwriters Laboratories  
 333 Pfingsten Road  
 Northbrook, Illinois 60062-2096  
 (847) 272-8800

## **APPENDIX 1-A**

### **AMERICAN SOCIETY OF MECHANICAL ENGINEERS**

ANSI/ASME PTC 4.1-64      Steam Generating Units

Available from:                      ANSI  
1430 Broadway  
New York, NY 10017  
(212) 868-1220

### **CODE OF FEDERAL REGULATIONS**

10 CFR, Part 430, Appendix N  
21 CFR, Section 1002.2 (1996)  
47 CFR, Parts 2 and 15 (1996)

Available from:                      Department of Energy  
Washington, DC 20585

### **COOLING TOWER INSTITUTE**

STD-201 (November 1996)      Certification Standard for Commercial Water Cooling Towers

Available from:                      Cooling Tower Institute  
Post Office Box 73383  
Houston, Texas 77273  
(281) 583-4087

### **HYDRONICS INSTITUTE**

HI Heating Boiler Standard 86, 6th Edition, June 1989

Available from:                      Hydronics Institute  
Berkeley Heights, New Jersey 07922  
(908) 464-8200

### **ILLUMINATING ENGINEERING SOCIETY**

Office Lighting American National Standard Practice ANSI/IES RP-1  
1993 IES Handbook, Applications Volume (1987 edition)

Available from:                      IESNA  
120 Wall Street, 17th Floor  
New York, New York 10005  
(212) 248-5000  
FAX (212) 248-5017

**ASSOCIATED AIR BALANCE COUNCIL**

AABC National Standards, 5th Edition, 1989

Available from: Associated Air Balance Council  
1518 K Street, NW, Suite 503  
Washington, DC 20005  
(202) 737-0202

NEBB Procedural Standards (1983)

**SHEET METAL AND AIR CONDITIONING CONTRACTORS NATIONAL ASSOCIATION**

HVAC Duct Construction Standards–Metal and Flexible, 1995, 2nd Edition

Installation Standards for Residential Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

Available from: Sheet Metal And Air Conditioning Contractors National Association  
1020 12th Street, Suite 101  
Sacramento, California 95814  
(916) 442-3807  
FAX (916) 442-6541

**NATIONAL FENESTRATION RATING COUNCIL**

NFRC 100-91 Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Thermal Properties (currently limited to U-values) (1991)

NFRC 100 Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-factors (1997)

NFRC 200 Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficients at Normal Incidence (1995)

NFRC 400 Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Air Leakage (1995)

Available from: National Fenestration Rating Council  
1300 Spring Street, Suite 200  
Silver Spring, Maryland 20910  
(301) 589-6372



# INDEX

## A

- ACCA** 101 (b), 150 (h)
- Accessible** 10-102, 101 (b), 114 (a), 118 (d), 119 (h), 121 (b), 121 (f), 122 (c), 122 (e), 122 (f), 130 (b), 131 (a), 131 (d), 132 (a), 150 (e), 150 (k), 150 (m), Table 1-L
- Additions** 100 (b), 149 (a), 152 (a)
- Additions and Alterations** 152 (a)
- Adjusted Fan Power Index** 144 (c)
- Administrative Requirements** 100 (f)
- Aerosol Sealant** 124 (a), 124 (b), 150 (m)
- Air-to-Air Heat Exchanger** 101 (b), 151 (f)
- Air Infiltration** 10-111 (a), 116 (a)
- Air Leakage** 10-111, 101 (b), 116 (a), 117 (a), 144 (b), 150 (m), Appendix 1-A
- Alterations** Table 1-A, 149 (b), 152 (b)
- Alternative Component Packages** 10-104, 10-109, 10-109 (d), 151 (a), 151 (f), Table 1-Z1 through 1-Z16
- Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency** 101 (b)
- Annunciated** 101 (b), 131 (a), 131 (d)
- ANSI** 101 (b), Table 1-C, 112 (b), 114 (a), 114 (b), Table 1-P, Appendix 1-A
- Appliance Efficiency Regulations** 101 (b), 110 (b), 111, Appendix 1-A
- Appliance Standards** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d)
- Appliances** 110 (b), 111, 115 (b), 150 (e), Appendix 1-A
- Approved by the Commission** 10-111 (b), 100 (g), 101 (b), 116 (a), 121 (c), 121 (f), 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 144 (b), 144 (e), 146 (a), 150 (h), 151 (d), 151 (e)
- Approved Calculation Method** 10-102, 10-104 (a), 10-104 (b), 10-109 (b), 100 (f), 101 (b), 150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (c)
- Area Category Method** 146 (b) 2
- ARI** 101 (b), Table 1-C, Appendix 1-A
- ASHRAE** 101 (b), 113 (a), 113 (b), 141 (c), 144 (b), 150 (h), Appendix 1-A
- ASTM** 101 (b), 116 (a), 123, 124 (b), 150 (f), 150 (l), 150 (m), Appendix 1-A
- Atria** 101 (b), 143 (a), 143 (b), Table 1-N
- Atrium** 101 (b)
- Attics** 101 (b)
- Auto Repair** 101 (b), 121 (a), Table 1-F, Table 1-N
- Automatic** 101 (b), 113 (a), 113 (b), 119, 119 (c), 119 (d), 119 (e), 119 (h), 122 (e), 122 (f), 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (d), 131 (f), 144 (f), Table 1-L, 150 (d), 150 (i), 150 (m), 151 (f)
- Automatic Daylighting** 119, 119 (e), 119 (h), Table 1-L
- Automatic Time Switch Control Devices** 101 (b), 119 (c)

## B

- Balancing** 121 (f)
- Ballast** 100 (g), 101 (b), 132
- Barriers** 101 (b), 150 (g), 150 (m), 151 (f), Notes on Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16
- Basic Requirements** 151 (a), 151 (b)



**Bathroom** 150 (k)  
**Bathtub** 150 (k)  
**Below Grade** 101 (b)  
**Boilers** Table 1-C, 144 (a), Appendix 1-A  
**Budget and Energy Use** 144 (c)  
**Building Heat Gain Equation** 143 (b) Equations 1-E, 1-F  
**Building Heat Loss Equation** 143 (b) Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Building Permit** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (a) 10-105 (b), 10-107 (a), 10-109 (b),  
100 (a), 101 (b), 141 (b) 146 (b), 151 (c)  
**Business and Professions Code** 10-103 (a)

## C

**Calculation Method** 10-102, 10-104, 10-104 (a), 10-104 (b), 10-109, 10-109 (b), 100 (f), 101 (b),  
150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (c) 151 (d), 151 (e), 151 (f)  
**Calculation of Budget and Energy Use** 141 (c)  
**Captive-Key Override** 101 (b), 131 (d)  
**Ceiling Insulation** 150 (a)  
**Ceilings** 101 (b), 130 (b), 143 (a), 150 (a), 150 (k), 151 (f)  
**Certificate of Compliance** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b)  
**Certification** 10-109 (c), 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b) 10-111 (c), 10-111 (d), 10-111 (e), 100 (g),  
112, 113 (a), 114 (a), 116 (a), 118 (a), 121 (f), 150 (j), 151 (e), Appendix 1-A  
**Certification by Manufacturers** 112, 113 (a), 114 (a), 118 (a)  
**Certifying Organization** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (d), 101 (b), 116 (a)  
**Chandeliers** Table 1-N, Figure 1-B  
**Church** 101 (b), 122 (e), 131 (d), Table 1-P  
**Circuiting** 132  
**Climate Control System** 101 (b)  
**Climate Zone** 101 (b), Figure 1-A, 141 (a), Table 1-H, 1-I, 1-K, 150 (g) 151 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c),  
151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Commission** 10-102, 10-104 (a), 10-105, 10-105 (b), 10-106 (a) 10-107 (a), 10-108 (a), 10-109 (a),  
10-109 (b), 10-109 (c), 10-109 (d), 10-109 (e), 10-110 (d), 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c),  
10-111 (d), 10-112 (a), 10-112 (b), 100 (f), 100 (g), 101 (b), 111, 116 (a), 119, 119 (d),  
121 (c), 121 (f), 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 144 (b), 144 (e), 146 (b), 150 (h)  
**Complete Building** 101 (b), 146 (b), Table 1-M  
**Compliance Approach** 10-102, 10-104, 100 (d), 140, 151  
**Concrete Raised Floor** Tables 1-I, 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Conditioned Floor Area** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 100 (e), 101 (b), 121 (b), Table 1-F, 121 (c), 122 (g),  
141 (a), 141 (b), 144 (d), 144 (g), 146 (b), 149 (b), Equation 1-N, 151 (f)  
**Conditioned Space** 100 (c), 100 (d), 101 (b), 124 (a), 131 (d) 144 (c), 149 (b), 150 (a), 150 (c),  
150 (d), 150 (g), 150 (m) 151 (f)  
**Conditioned Volume** 101 (b)  
**Constant Volume** 144 (c)  
**Construction in Existing Buildings** 100 (d)  
**Contaminants** 121 (a), 121 (b), 121 (e), 141 (c), 144 (e)  
**Continuously Burning Pilot Light** 115  
**Control Devices** 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 119, 119 (c), 119 (e) 119 (f), 119 (h)

**Controls** 101 (b), 112 (a), 112 (b), 113 (a), 113 (b), 121 (e) 122, 122 (a), 122 (b), 122 (d), 122 (e), 122 (f), 131, 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (c), 131 (d), 141 (b), 141 (c), 144 (a), 144 (c) 144 (d), 144 (e), 144 (f), 146 (a), Table 1-L  
**Covered Product** 101 (b)  
**Covers** 114 (a), 114 (b)  
**Crawl Space** 101 (b), 150 (c), 150 (d), 150 (g), 151 (f)  
**Criteria** 10-103 (b), 10-109 (b), 10-111, 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c), 10-111 (d), 10-112, 10-112 (a), 10-112 (b), 116 (b), 122 (b), 143 (a), 150 (h)  
**CTI** 101 (b)

## **D**

**Dampers** 121 (e), 122 (f), 122 (g), 144 (e), 150 (m)  
**Daylighting Control Devices** 119, 119 (e), 119 (h)  
**Daylighting Controls** 146 (a), Table 1-L  
**Daylit Area** 101 (b), 119 (h), 131 (c), 146 (a)  
**Decorative Gas Appliance** 101 (b), 150 (e)  
**Default SHGC** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b)  
**Default Solar Heat Gain Coefficient** 116 (b), Table 1-E  
**Default U-Values** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-112 (a), Table 1-D  
**Definitions** 10-102, 101, 101 (b)  
**Degree Day, Heating** 101 (b)  
**Demising Partitions** 101 (b)  
**Demising Wall** 101 (b), 118 (e), 141 (a), 143 (a)  
**Depletable** 100 (d), 101 (b), 140 (a), 141 (c), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e)  
**Descriptions** 101 (b), 151 (a)  
**Design Conditions** 101 (b), 144 (b), 144 (c), 150 (h), 151 (e)  
**Design Heat Gain Rate** 101 (b), 150 (h)  
**Design Heat Loss Rate** 101 (b), 150 (h)  
**Design Load** 144 (a), 144 (b)  
**Devices** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (b), 10-109 (b), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 119, 119 (a), 119 (b), 119 (c), 119 (d), 119 (e), 119 (f), 119 (g), 119 (h), 122 (g), 131 (a), 141 (c), 150, 151 (e), 151 (f)  
**Dimming** 101 (b), 119 (e), 119 (f), 146 (a), Table 1-L  
**Directional Inlets** 114 (b)  
**Directly Conditioned Space** 101 (b)  
**Display** 101 (b), 121 (f), 131 (e), 141 (a), 143 (a), 143 (b) 146 (a), 146 (b)  
**Display Lighting** 101 (b), 131 (e), 146 (b)  
**Documentation** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-106 (a), 10-106 (b), 10-109 (b), 151 (c)  
**Doors** 101 (b), 110 (b), 116, 116 (a), 116 (b), 121 (a), 121 (b), 143 (a), 144 (c), 150 (e), 152 (d)  
**Draperies** 151 (e)  
**Drawbands** 124 (b), 150 (m)  
**Dressing Room** 101 (b), 146 (b)  
**Dual Switching** 131 (b)  
**Ducting** 101 (b), 121 (d)  
**Ducts** 100 (d), 117 (d), 124, 124 (a), 124 (b), 150 (m), 151 (f), 152 (b), 152 (d)  
**Ducts and Plenums** 124, 124 (a), 150 (m)  
**Dwelling Units** 10-103, 151 (a), 151 (b)

## **E**

- East-Facing** 151 (f)
- Economizer** 101 (b), 144 (d), 144 (e)
- Effective Aperture** 101 (b)
- Efficacy** 101 (b), 130 (b), 146 (a), 150 (k)
- Electric Resistance** 101 (b), 112 (b), 114 (a), 122 (d), 144 (g), 151 (f), 152 (c)
- Electrical Code** 132 (b), 146 (a)
- Electronic High Frequency Ballasts** 132 (b)
- Enclosed Space** 101 (b), 121 (a), 131 (b), 131 (c), 151 (f)
- Energy Budget** 10-102, 10-104 (b), 10-106 (a), 10-109 (a), 10-109 (b), 10-109 (d), 101 (b), 140 (a), 141, 141 (a), 141 (c), 149 (a), 149 (b), 151 (a), 151 (c), 151 (d), 152 (a), 152 (b), 152 (c)
- Energy Efficiency** 10-102, 10-109 (b), 101 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 152, 152 (a), 152 (b), 152 (d)
- Energy Efficiency Ratio** 101 (b)
- Energy Factor** 101 (b), 150 (j), 151 (b), 152 (a)
- Energy Obtained from Depletable Sources** 100 (d), 101 (b)
- Energy Obtained from Nondepletable Sources** 101 (b)
- Energy Use** 101 (b), 123, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 144 (a), 144 (e), 144 (f), 150 (i), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 152 (b)
- Enforcement** 10-101 (b), 10-102, 10-103, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (a), 10-104 (b), 10-105, 10-105 (a), 10-105 (b), 10-107 (a), 10-109 (b), 100 (f), 116 (a), 122 (g), 131 (d)
- Enforcing Agency** 10-102, 10-107 (a), 100 (g), 101 (b), 122 (e), 122 (f), 144 (a), 144 (e)
- Entire Building** 10-103 (a), 100 (e), 101 (b), 121 (c), 144 (g), 146 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 149 (d)
- Envelope** 100 (b), 101 (b), 117 (a), 122 (a), 140, 141 (a), 141 (b), 142 (a), 143, 143 (a), 143 (b), 144 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 151 (f)
- Envelope Component Approach** 143 (a)
- Equation** 123 (b), 143 (a), 143 (b), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (f)
- Equipment** 10-103 (c), 10-111 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110, 110 (a), 110 (b), 112, 112 (a), 113, 113 (a), 113 (b), 114, 114 (a), 114 (b), 115, 120, 122 (f), 123, 130, 130 (a), 130 (b), 141 (c), 144 (a), 144 (b), 144 (d), 144 (e), 144 (g), 146 (a), 149 (a), 149 (b), 149 (c), 150 (h), 150 (j), 151 (c), 151 (e), 152 (a), 152 (b), Appendix 1-A
- Equipment Information** 10-103 (c)
- Equipment Sizing** 144 (b), 150 (h)
- Exceptional Designs** 10-104, 10-109 (b)
- Exceptional Methods** 10-109 (b)
- Executive Director** 10-102, 10-103 (b), 10-104 (b), 10-105 (a), 10-105 (b), 10-106 (b), 10-107 (b), 10-108 (b), 10-109 (b), 10-109 (d), 10-109 (e), 10-110 (a), 10-110 (b), 10-110 (c), 10-110 (d), 10-110 (e), 10-110 (f), 150 (i), 150 (j), 151 (d), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152 (a)
- Exemption** 10-108, 100 (f)
- Exercise Center** 101 (b), 146 (b)
- Exfiltration** 101 (b), 117 (a)
- Existing Buildings** 100 (d), 118 (d), 149, 152, 152 (a)
- Existing Residential Buildings** 152 (a), 152 (b)
- Exterior** 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), Table 1-D, 118 (b), 124 (b), 131 (f), 141 (a), 141 (c), 143 (a), Equations 1-C, 1-D, 146 (a), 150 (e), 150 (f), 150 (g), 150 (j), 150 (m), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Appendix 1-A
- Exterior Door** 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), 143 (a)
- Exterior Floor/Soffit** 101 (b), Equations 1-C, 1-D

**Exterior Lighting** 131 (f)  
**Exterior Mass** Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Exterior Roof/Ceiling** 101 (b), 141 (a), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Exterior Shading Devices** 101 (b), 141 (c), 151 (f)  
**Exterior Wall** 101 (b), 141 (a), 143 (a), Equations 1-C, 1-D, 150 (e), 150 (g), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**External Insulation** 113 (b), 118 (d), 151 (b)

## **F**

**Factory-Fabricated Duct Systems** 124 (b), 150 (m)  
**Fan Adjustment** 144 (c)  
**Fan Power Index** 144 (c)  
**Fan System** 101 (b), 144 (c), 144 (e), 150 (m)  
**Fans** 144 (c), 150 (m)  
**Fenestration** 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c), 10-111 (d), 10-111 (e), 100 (g), 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), Table 1-D, 141 (c), 149 (b), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152 (b), Appendix 1-A  
**Fenestration Product** 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (c), 10-111 (d), 10-111 (e), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), Table 1-D, 141 (c), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152 (b), Appendix 1-A  
**Field Fabricated** 101 (b), Table 1-D  
**Field-Fabricated Duct Systems** 124 (b), 150 (m)  
**Field-Fabricated Exterior Door** 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b)  
**Field-Fabricated Fenestration Product** 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), 141 (a), 151 (e)  
**Financial Institution** 101 (b), Table 1-N  
**Fireplace** 101 (b), 150 (e), 150 (m)  
**Fixed Seating** 101 (b), 121 (b)  
**Fixtures** 101 (b), 130 (b), 146 (a), 149 (b), 150 (k)  
**Flamespread Rating** 118 (c)  
**Flexible Duct** 124 (a), 124 (b), 150 (m), Appendix 1-A  
**Flexible Lighting System** 146 (a)  
**Floor/Soffit Type** 101 (b), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Food Preparation** 101 (b), 146 (a), Table 1-N  
**Framed Partition or Assembly** 101 (b)  
**Furnaces** Table 1-C, 115, 115 (a), Appendix 1-A

## **G**

**Gas Heating System** 101 (b), 151 (f)  
**Gas Log** 101 (b), 150 (e)  
**Glazed Wall Systems** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 116 (a)  
**Greenhouse Window** 101 (b), 152 (a), 152 (b)  
**Gross Exterior Roof Area** 101 (b), 143 (a), 143 (b), 146 (a)  
**Gross Exterior Wall Area** 101 (b), 141 (a), 143 (a) Eq 1-C  
**Gross Sales Floor Area** 101 (b), Table 1-P  
**Gross Sales Wall Area** 101 (b), Table 1-R  
**Gymnasium** 101 (b), Table 1-N

## H

**Habitable Story** 101 (b)

**Handbook** 113 (a), 113 (b), 141 (c), 144 (b), Table 1-B, 150 (h), Appendix 1-A

**Heat Capacity** 101 (b), Table 1-J, 144 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b) Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Heat Gain Equation** Equations 1-B, 1-E, 1-F

**Heat Gain Rate** 101 (b), 150 (h)

**Heat Loss Equation** Equations 1-C, 1-D

**Heat Loss Rate** 101 (b), 150 (h)

**Heat Pump** 100 (g), 101 (b), Table 1-C, 112 (b), 122 (d), 144 (g) 150 (i), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Appendix 1-A

**Heat Pumps** 100 (g), 101 (b), Table 1-C, 112 (b), 122 (d), 150 (i)

**Heaters** 100 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), Table 1-C, 112 (b), 115, 115 (c), 115 (d), 118 (d), 122 (d), 122 (e), 131 (d), Table 1-L, Table 1-M, 150 (i), 150 (j), Table 1-N, 152 (a), Appendix 1-A

**Heating Equipment** 101 (b), 114 (b), 144 (g), Appendix 1-A

**Heating Systems** 100 (b), 110 (b), 113, 113 (a), 113 (b), 114, 118 (d), 120, 123, Table 1-G, 140, 144 (g), 145, 149 (b), 150 (h), 150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152 (a), 152 (b)

**Heavy Mass** Table 1-J, Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**High Bay** 101 (b), Tables 1-M, 1-N

**High Efficacy Luminaire** 130 (b), 150 (k)

**High-Rise Residential Building** Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 120, Table 1-F, 122 (c), 130 (a), 130 (b), 131 (d), 140, Table 1-I, 144 (e), 144 (g), 145 (b), 146 (a), 146 (b), 149 (b)

**Holiday** 131 (d)

**Horizontal Glazing** 101 (b), 131 (c)

**Hotel/Motel** Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 120, 122 (c), 122 (e), 130 (a), 130 (b), 131 (d), 140, Tables 1-H, 1-I, 144 (e), 144 (g), 145 (a), 146 (a), 146 (b), 149, 149 (b)

**HSPF** 101 (b), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**HVAC System** 10-102, 101 (b), 113 (b)

## I

**ICBO** 101 (b), 124 (a), 150 (m)

**IES** Tables 1-B, 1-P, Appendix 1-A

**Illuminance** 101 (b), 119 (e), 119 (f), 131 (b), Figure 1-B, Tables 1-P, 1-S

**Illuminance Category (ies)** Figure 1-B, 146 (b), Tables 1-P, 1-S

**Incandescent** 130 (b), 150 (k)

**Independent Certifying Organization** 10-111 (b), 10-111 (d), 116 (a)

**Indirectly Conditioned Space** 101 (b)

**Infiltration** 10-111 (a), 101 (b), 116 (a), 117 (a), 150 (f), 151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Infiltration Barrier** 150 (f), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Inlet, Combustion** 150 (m)

**Inlet, Directional** 114 (b)

**Insect Screens** 151 (e)

**Inspection** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (d), 101 (b), 116 (a), 151 (e)

**Installation Certificate** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-103 (d)

**Insulation** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 100 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 113 (b), 118 (a), 118 (b), 118 (d), 118 (e), 123, 123 (a), Table 1-G, 123 (b), 130 (b), 143 (a), 150 (a), 150 (b), 150 (c), 150 (d), 150 (g), 150 (j), Table 1-T, 150 (k), 150 (l), 150 (m), Equation 1-N, 151 (f), Table 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152 (a), Appendix 1-A

**Insulation Certificate** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b)

**Interior Mass** 101 (b), 151 (f), Table 1-U, Equation 1-P

**Internal and External Insulation** 113 (b)

**Internal Heat Gains** 144 (b)

**Internal Insulation** 150 (j)

**Interpretations** 10-107, 100 (f)

**Isolation Area** 122 (g)

**Isolation Area Devices** 122 (g)

**Isolation Device** 101 (b), 122 (g)

## **J**

**NO REQUIREMENTS**

## **K**

**Kitchen** 101 (b), 130 (b), Table 1-N, 150 (k)

## **L**

**Label** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), 116 (a), Table 1-D, 124 (b), 150 (b), 150 (j), 150 (m), Notes to Table 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Laundry** 101 (b), Table 1-N, 150 (k)

**Lavatories** 113 (b)

**Lecture** 101 (b), Table 1-N

**Library** 101 (b), Table 1-N

**Light Mass** Table 1-J, Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Lighting** 100 (b), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 119, 119 (e), 119 (f), 119 (h), 130, 130 (a), 130 (b), 131, 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (c), 131 (d), 131 (e), 131 (f), 132, 132 (b), 140, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 142 (d), 144 (b), 146, 146 (a), Table 1-L, 146 (b), Tables 1-B, 1-M, 1-N, 1-P, 1-S, 149 (a), 149 (b), 150 (k), 151 (e), Appendix 1-A

**Lighting Circuiting** 132

**Lighting Control Devices** 100 (g), 110 (b), 119, 119 (e), 119 (h)

**Lighting Controls** 131, Table 1-L

**Lighting Power Adjustment Factors** Table 1-L

**Lighting Power Density** 141 (a), 141 (b), 146, 146 (a), 146 (b), Tables 1-M, 1-P, 1-S

**Lighting Systems and Equipment** 130, 130 (a), 130 (b)

**Lighting Wattage Excluded** 146 (a)

**Loads** 101 (b), 123, 131 (d), 141 (c), 144 (a), 144 (b), 144 (c), 144 (f), 151 (e)

**Locally Adopted Energy Standards** 10-106, 100 (f)

**Locker** 101 (b), Table 1-N

**Loose Fill** 10-103 (a), 118 (a), 150 (b)  
**Lounge** 101 (b), 121 (a), Tables 1-F, 1-N  
**Low Bay** 101 (b), Tables 1-M, 1-N  
**Low-Rise Residential Building** 100 (a), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 118 (d), 150, 151 (a), 151 (e),  
Notes on Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152, 152 (b)  
**LPG** 101 (b), 102, Table 1-B  
**Lumen Maintenance** 101 (b), 119, 119 (f), 119 (h), Table 1-L  
**Luminaires** 101 (b), 119 (h), 130 (b), 131 (b), 131 (c), 132 (a), 132 (b), 146 (b), 150 (k), 151 (f)

## **M**

**Maintenance Information** 10-103 (b)  
**Mall** 10-103 (d), 101 (b), Table 1-D, 119 (d), 121 (a), 121 (c), 122 (e), 131 (d), 144 (a), 146 (a),  
Table 1-N, 146 (b), 150 (j), 150 (m)  
**Mandatory Features** 150, 151 (a)  
**Mandatory Measures** 10-103 (b), 100 (d), 100 (e), 150, 151 (a)  
**Mandatory Requirements** 111 through 114, 116 through 139  
**Manufactured Device** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-103 (c), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (b), 100 (g),  
101 (b)  
**Manufactured Fenestration Product** 101 (b), 116 (a), Table 1-D, 151 (e)  
**Map, California Climate Zone** Figure 1-A  
**Masonry** 101 (b), 141 (c), 150 (e), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Mass** 101 (b), Tables 1-H, 1-I, 1-J, 151 (f), Tables 1-P, 1-U, 1-Z1 through 1-Z16,  
Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Mastic** 124 (a), 124 (b), 150 (m)  
**Mechanical** 10-102, 10-103 (b), 100 (a), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 119 (g), 121 (b), 121 (e),  
121 (f), 122 (e), 124 (a), 144 (a), 144 (c), 144 (d), 144 (e), 144 (f), 144 (g), Table 1-N  
150 (e), 150 (m), 151 (f), California Mechanical Code, Appendix 1-A  
**Mechanical Cooling** 100 (a), 101 (b), 122 (e), 144 (a), 144 (e), 144 (g)  
**Mechanical Heating** 100 (a), 100 (d), 101 (b), 122 (e), 144 (a), 144 (e)  
**Mechanical Room** 101 (b), Table 1-N  
**Mechanical Ventilation** 121 (b), 121 (e), 151 (f)  
**Mechanically Cooled** 100 (d)  
**Mechanically Heated** 100 (d), 144 (d)  
**Medium Mass** Table 1-J  
**Metal Framed** Tables 1-D, 1-H, 1-I, 141 (c)  
**Mixed Occupancy** 100 (e), 146 (b)  
**Modeling Assumptions** 101 (b)  
**Mounting Height Multipliers** Table 1-R  
**Multi-Scene Dimming System** 101 (b), Table 1-L  
**Museum** 101 (b), Table 1-N

## **N**

**Natural Gas** 101 (b), 102, 115, 144 (g), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152, 152 (b)  
**Natural Ventilation** 121 (b)  
**New Construction** 10-103 (d), 10-105 (a), 100 (d), 150

**New Construction in Existing Buildings** 100 (d)  
**Newly Conditioned Space** 100 (d), 101 (b)  
**NFRC Rating Procedure** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (d), 10-112 (a)  
**Nonresidential Building** 10-101, 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-109 (b), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 118 (e), 143 (a), Table 1-H, 149 (b)  
**Nonresidential Manual** 10-103 (a), 101 (b), Appendix 1-A  
**North-Facing** Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

## O

**Occupancy** 10-103 (a), 10-103 (b), 10-103 (d), 100 (a), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 100 (e), 101 (b), 121 (c), 121 (f), 122 (e), 131 (d), 141 (a), 144 (b), 146 (b), 149 (b), 151 (e), 152 (b), Appendix 1-A  
**Occupancy Sensor** 101 (b), 131 (d)  
**Occupancy Types** 146 (b)  
**Occupant-Sensing Device** 119 (d), 119 (g), 119 (h), 131 (a), 131 (b)  
**Occupant Sensor** Table 1-L  
**Operating Information** 10-103 (b)  
**Optimal Overhang** 101 (b), 151 (f)  
**Ornamental Chandeliers** 101 (b), Table 1-N, 146 (b)  
**Other Loads** 144 (b)  
**Outdoor Air** 101 (b), 121 (a), 121 (b), 121 (c), 121 (d), 121 (e), 122 (e), 122 (f), 144 (b), 144 (e), 144 (f)  
**Outdoor Design Conditions** 144 (b)  
**Outside Air** 101 (b), 121 (e), 121 (f), 141 (c), 144 (e)  
**Overall Envelope Approach** 143 (b)  
**Overall Heat Gain** 101 (b), 143 (b), Equations 1-E, 1-F, 149 (b)  
**Overall Heat Loss** 101 (b), 143 (b), Equations 1-C, 1-D, 149 (b)  
**Overhead Glazing** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 116 (a)  
**Override** 101 (b), 122 (e), 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (d), Table 1-L

## P

**Package A** 151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Package B** Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Package C** Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Package D** 151 (b), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152 (a)  
**Part 6** 10-101 (a), 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (c), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (a), 10-104 (b), 10-105 (a), 10-105 (b), 10-106 (a), 10-106 (b), 10-107 (a), 10-107 (b), 10-108 (a), 10-109 (b), 10-109 (d), 10-111, 10-111 (a), 100 (a), 100 (b), 100 (c), 100 (d), 100 (e), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110, 110 (b), 120, 130 (a), 140, 149 (d), 152 (a), 152 (d)  
**Passive Solar Design** Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Performance** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-104 (a), 10-109 (b), 10-111 (d), Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 140, 141, 141 (a), 141 (b), 146 (a), Table 1-N, 146 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 150 (m), 151, 151 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (d), 151 (e), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, 152 (a), 152 (b)  
**Performance Approach** Table 1-A, 100 (d), 140 (a), 141, 149 (a), 149 (b), 152 (a), 152 (b)  
**Performance Compliance Approach** 10-102, 10-104 (a), 151



**Perimeter** 100 (g), 101 (b), 122 (a), 141 (a), 143 (a), Equation 1-C, 150 (l), 151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Permanent Labels** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 116 (a)

**Permit** 10-102, 10-103, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d), 10-104 (a), 10-105 (b), 10-106 (a), 10-106 (b), 10-107 (a), 10-109 (b), 100 (a), 100 (f), 101 (b), 119 (g), 121 (f), 131 (a), 141 (a), 141 (b), 146 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 152 (b)

**Pilot Light** 114 (a), 115, 150 (e)

**Pipe and Tank Systems** 150 (j)

**Pipe Insulation** 123, Tables 1-G, 1-T, Appendix 1-A

**Plenums** 124, 124 (a), 150 (m)

**Pool and Spa** 110 (b), 114, 115

**Poor Quality Lighting Tasks** 101 (b)

**Poor Quality Tasks** Table 1-P

**Power Adjustment Factors** Table 1-L

**Pre-Occupancy** 121 (c)

**Prescriptive** 10-102, Table 1-A, 100 (d), 101 (b), 140, 140 (b), 142, 143, Tables 1-H, 1-I, 144, 144 (c), 145, 146, 149 (a), 149 (b), 151, 151 (a), 151 (f), 152 (a), 152 (b)

**Prescriptive Approach** 100 (d), 140, 140 (b), 142, 149 (a), 149 (b), 152 (a), 152 (b)

**Prescriptive Envelope Criteria** Tables 1-H, 1-I

**Prescriptive Requirements** 143 through 146

**Pressure Sensitive Tape** 124 (b), 150 (m)

**Private Office or Work Area** 101 (b), 146 (b)

**Process** 10-110 (f), 10-111 (d), 101 (b), 121 (e), 122 (b), 123, 141 (c), 144 (b), 144 (c), 144 (d), 144 (f)

**Process Environment Temperature** 101 (b)

**Process Load** 101 (b), 123, 141 (c), 144 (b), 144 (c)

**Public Areas** 101 (b), 131 (a)

**Public Domain Computer Programs** 10-109 (a), 10-109 (b), 101 (b)

**Public Lavatories** 113 (b)

**Pumps** 100 (g), 101 (b), Table 1-C, 112 (b), 113 (b), 122 (d), 150 (i)

## Q

### NO REQUIREMENTS

## R

**Raised Concrete** Table 1-I

**Raised Floor** 101 (b), Table 1-I, 150 (d), 151 (f), Table 1-U, Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Raised Floor Insulation** 150 (d), 151 (f)

**Rates** 10-109 (b), 101 (b), 102, Table 1-B, 116 (a), Table 1-F, 121 (e), 144 (b), 151 (c)

**Readily Accessible** 10-103 (b), 101 (b), 114 (a), 121 (b), 121 (f), 122 (e), 122 (f), 131 (a), 131 (d), 150 (e), 150 (k), 150 (m)

**Reception** 101 (b), Table 1-N

**Recessed** 130 (b), 132 (a), 150 (k)

**Recool** 101 (b), 144 (d)  
**Recreation** 101 (b), Table 1-N  
**Reduced Flicker Operation** 101 (b), 119 (e), 119 (f)  
**Redundant** 141 (c), 146 (a)  
**Reheat** 101 (b), 144 (d), 149 (a), 149 (b)  
**Relative Solar Heat Gain** 101 (b), 143 (a), Equation 1-B, Tables 1-H, 1-I, Equation 1-E  
**Reset** 101 (b), 122 (e), 131 (a), 144 (f), 146 (a)  
**Residential Heating and Air Conditioning Systems** 150 (h), Appendix 1-A  
**Residential Manual** 10-103 (a), 101 (b), Equation 1-P, App 1-A  
**Roof/Ceiling Type** 101 (b), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Roofs** 143 (a)  
**Room Cavity Ratio** 101 (b), Table 1-S  
**Rules** 10-111, 101, 101 (a), 141 (c), 143, 144 (b)  
**Rules of Construction** 101, 101 (a)  
**Runout** 101 (b), Table 1-G

## S

**Safety Factor** 144 (b)  
**Sales Feature Display** 101 (b), Table 1-P, 146 (b)  
**Sales Feature Floor** 101 (b), 146 (b)  
**Sales Feature Wall** 101 (b), 146 (b)  
**Sconce** 101 (b), Table 1-N, 146 (b)  
**Scope** 10-101, 100, 100 (d), 101 (b)  
**SEER** 101 (b), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Semi-Conditioned Space** 100 (a), 101 (b), 149 (b)  
**Service Water Heating** 101 (b), 110 (b), 113, 113 (a), 113 (b), 120, 123, Table 1-G, 140, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 142 (c), 145, 145 (a), 145 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 151 (e), 152 (b)  
**Service Water Heating Systems and Equipment** 110 (b), 113, 120  
**Setback** 122 (e), 122 (g), 144 (b), 150 (i), 151 (f), Notes to Table 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Setback Thermostats** 150 (i), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Shading** 101 (b), Table 1-E, 141 (c), 143 (a), 144 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 151 (f)  
**Shading Coefficient** 101 (b), Table 1-E, 144 (b)  
**SHGC** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (e), 10-112 (a), 101 (b), 116 (a), Table 1-E, Equations 1-B, 1-E, 1-F  
**Shower** 150 (k)  
**Shut-Off** 122 (b), 122 (g), 131 (d)  
**Site Solar Energy** 101 (b), 113 (b), 114 (a), 114 (b), 144 (d)  
**Sizing** 144 (a), 144 (b), 150 (h)  
**Skylight Area** 101 (b), 141 (a), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Skylight Type** 101 (b), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Skylights** 101 (b), 141 (a), 141 (b), Equation 1-B, Tables 1-H, 1-I, 1-L  
**Slab Edge** 150 (l), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**SMACNA** 101 (b), 150 (h)  
**Soffits** 141 (a), 141 (b), 143 (a), Equations 1-C, 1-D  
**Solar Energy** 101 (b), 113 (b), 114 (a), 114 (b), 144 (d), 144 (e)  
**Solar Factor** Equations 1-E, 1-F, and 1-J

**Solar Heat Gain Coefficient** 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c), 101 (b), Table 1-E, 141 (c), 143 (a), Equation 1-B, Tables 1-H, 1-I, Equations 1-E, 1-F, 144 (b), 149 (b), 151 (e), 151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16, Appendix 1-A

**Solar Heating Equipment** 114 (b)

**Solar Noon** 101 (b), 151 (f)

**Solar System** Notes to Tables 1-Z through 1-Z16

**Solar Water Heating** 113 (b), 118 (d), 150 (j)

**Source Energy Conversion Rates** Table 1-B

**Source Energy Use** 122 (e), 123, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 144 (a), 144 (e), 152 (b)

**South-Facing** 101 (b), Equation 1-B, 151 (f), Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16

**Spa** 114, 114 (a), 114 (b), 115, 115 (d), 116 (b), 118 (b)

**Space Conditioning** 100 (b), 100 (d), 101 (b), 110 (b), 112, 112 (a), 118 (d), 120, 121 (e), 121 (f), 122, 122 (a), 122 (e), 122 (g), 123, 140, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 142 (b), 144, 144 (c), 144 (d), 144 (e), 144 (f), 149 (a), 149 (b), 150 (h), 150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 152 (a), 152 (b), 152 (c)

**Space Conditioning Budget** 141 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 152 (a)

**Space Conditioning Duct** 100 (d), 118 (d)

**Space Conditioning Equipment** 110 (b), 112, Table 1-C, 120, 123, 150 (h), 150 (j)

**Space Conditioning Source Energy** 141 (b)

**Space Conditioning System** 100 (b), 101 (b), 120, 121 (e), 121 (f), 122, 122 (e), 122 (g), 123, 140, 141 (b), 142 (b), 144, 144 (d), 144 (e), 144 (f), 149 (a), 149 (b), 150 (h), 152 (b), 152 (c)

**Space Conditioning Zone** 122 (a), 144 (d)

**Stairs** 101 (b), 146 (b)

**Standards** 10-102, 10-103 (a), 10-103 (d), 10-106, 10-106 (a), 10-106 (b), 10-109 (b), 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 100 (b), 100 (f), 101 (b), 112 (a), 114 (b), 116 (a), 118 (a), 121 (f), 150 (h), 151 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (d), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152, 152 (d)

**State Building Code** 132 (b)

**State Buildings** 113 (b)

**Static Pressure** 144 (c)

**Storage Tanks** 113 (b), 150 (j)

**Supervisory Entity** 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c), 10-111 (d)

**Support Area** 101 (b), 146 (b)

**Switch** 101 (b), 114 (a), 114 (b), 119, 119 (c), 119 (e), 119 (h) 122 (e), 130 (b), 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (d), 131 (e), 131 (f), 132 (a), 132 (b), 146 (a), 146 (b), 150 (k)

**Switching** 119 (e), 131 (a), 131 (b), 131 (d), 132 (b), 146 (a)

**Systems and Equipment** 110, 110 (b), 113, 114, 119 (h), 120, 130, 130 (a), 130 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b)

## **T**

**Tailored Method** 146 (b)

**Tandem Wired** 132

**Tank Insulation** 150 (j), 151 (f)

**Temperature Controls** 113 (a), 113 (b)

**Temperature Factor** 143 (b)

**Temperature Reset** 144 (f)

**Temporary Label** 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 116 (a)

**Thermal Break** 116 (b)

**Thermal Mass** 101 (b), 151 (f)

**Thermostatic Controls** 122 (a), 122 (b)  
**Thermostats** 112 (b), 114 (b), 122 (b), 122 (c), 122 (e), 150 (i), 151 (f), Notes to Tables 1-Z1 through 1-Z16  
**Throw Distance** 101 (b), 146 (b)  
**Total Fan Power Index** 144 (c)  
**Training** 10-111 (d), 101 (b), 146 (b)  
**Tuning** 101 (b), 146 (a)

## U

**U-Value** 10-111, 10-111 (a), 10-111 (b), 10-111 (c), 10-111 (e), 10-112 (a), 101 (b), 116 (a), 116 (b), 141 (c), 143 (a), 150 (a), 150 (c), 150 (d), 150 (f), 151 (e), 152 (a), 152 (b), 152 (d)  
**UBC** 100 (c), 101 (b), 121 (b), 146 (a), 150 (h), 151 (f), 152 (a)  
**UIMC** 101 (b), 151 (f)  
**UMC** 101 (b), 118 (d), 124 (a), 150 (m), 152 (d)  
**Unconditioned Space** 101 (b), 150 (a), 150 (c), 150 (d)  
**Unit Interior Mass Capacity** 101 (b), Equation 1-P  
**Urea Formaldehyde Foam** 118 (b)

## V

**Vane-Axial Fan** 144 (c)  
**Vapor Barrier** 101 (b), 118 (b), 150 (d), 150 (f), 150 (g), 150 (m), 151 (f)  
**Variable Air Volume** 101 (b), 144 (c), 144 (d), 149 (a), 149 (b)  
**Variable Pitch Blades** 144 (c)  
**Ventilation** 10-103 (b), 101 (b), 121, 121 (a), 121 (b), 121 (c), 121 (e), 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (d), 150 (g), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152 (d)  
**Visible Light Transmittance** 101 (b), 141 (c)  
**Vocational Room** 101 (b), 146 (b)

## W

**Waiting** 101 (b), 146 (a), 146 (b)  
**Wall Insulation** 150 (c), 150 (d), 151 (f), 152 (a)  
**Wall Type** 101 (b), 143 (b)  
**Walls** 101 (b), 118 (b), 118 (e), 121 (b), 141 (a), 141 (b), 143 (a), 143 (b), 150 (c), 150 (d), 150 (g), 151 (f), 152 (a), 152 (d)  
**Water Heaters** 100 (d), 100 (g), 113 (b), 118 (d), 150 (j), 151 (b), 152 (a)  
**Water Heating** 100 (b), 100 (d), 100 (g), 101 (b), 110 (b), 112 (a), 113, 113 (a), 113 (b), 118 (d), 120, 123, 123 (a), 140, 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 142, 145, 145 (a), 145 (b), 149 (a), 149 (b), 150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (d), 151 (e), 151 (f), 152 (a), 152 (b), 152 (c)  
**Water Heating Budget** 141 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (d), 151 (f), 152 (a)  
**Water Heating Systems** 100 (b), 110 (b), 113, 113 (a), 113 (b), 118 (d), 120, 123, 123 (a), 140, 145, 149 (b), 150 (j), 151 (b), 151 (f), 152 (a), 152 (b)  
**Wattage** 141 (b), 144 (c), 146 (a), 146 (b)

**Well Index** 101 (b)

**West-Facing** 151 (f)

**Window Type** 101 (b), 143 (b)

**Window Wall Ratio** 101 (b), 143 (b), 146 (a)

**Windows** 101 (b), 110 (b), 116 (b), 141 (a), 141 (b), 141 (c), 143 (a), 143 (b), 146 (a), 152 (d)

**Wood Framed** 141 (c), 150 (c)

**Wood Framing** 150 (a), 150 (c), 150 (d), 151 (f)

**Wood Heater** 100 (a), 100 (d), 101 (b), 150 (m)

**Wood Stove** 101 (b), 150 (i), 151 (f)

## **X**

**NO REQUIREMENTS**

## **Y**

**NO REQUIREMENTS**

## **Z**

**Zonal** 121 (d), 122 (b)

**Zone** 101 (b), 112 (a), 122 (a), 122 (b), 122 (g), 141 (a), 141 (c), 143 (a), 143 (b), 144 (d), 144 (f),  
144 (g), 151 (a), 151 (b), 151 (c), 151 (e), 151 (f)

**Zone Controls** 144 (d)